



LMT00

Textiles, Clothing and Footwear Training Package

Volume 19 of 19
Applied Fashion Design & Technology

Version Number: 3
Review Date: June 2009

ISC **INDUSTRY
SKILLS
COUNCILS**
Creating Australia's Future

Textiles Clothing and Footwear Training Package LMT00 Version 3

© Commonwealth of Australia 2005

This work has been produced with the assistance of funding provided by the Commonwealth Government through Department of Education Science and Training (DEST).

An individual may make a photocopy of all or part of the work for their personal use.

A Registered Training Organisation may make photocopies of all or part of the work for the teaching purposes of that organisation, including for supply to its students provided that any consideration does not exceed the marginal cost of preparation, reproduction, assembly and delivery.

Except as permitted under the Copyright Act 1968, all other rights are reserved. Requests for permission may be directed to:

Branch Manager,
Technology and Information Services Branch,
Industry Skills Development Group,
Department of Education, Science and Training,
GPO Box 9880 Canberra City, ACT, 2601.
Website: www.dest.gov.au

This work is the result of wide consultations with Australian industry participants. It is a collaborative view and does not necessarily represent the view of DEST or any specific body. For the sake of brevity it may omit factors which could be pertinent in particular cases.

While care has been taken in the preparation of this Training Package, DEST and the original developer do not warrant that any licensing or registration requirements specified here are either complete or up-to-date for your State or Territory. DEST and the original developer do not accept any liability for any damage or loss (including indirect and consequential loss) incurred by any person as a result of relying on the information contained in this Training Package.

This Training Package should not be regarded as professional advice and it should not be relied upon in any important matter without obtaining appropriate advice relevant to your circumstances.

Published by:	<i>TVET Australia</i> <i>Level 21/22, 390 St Kilda Rd</i> <i>Melbourne VIC 3004</i> <i>PO Box 12211 A'Beckett St PO</i> <i>Melbourne VIC 8006</i>
ABN:	99062758632
Phone:	+61 3 9832 8100
Fax:	+61 3 98328199
Email:	sales@tvetaustralia.com.au
Website:	www.tvetaustralia.com.au

First published:	<i>May 2000</i>
ISBN:	<i>0 642 80589 X</i>
Stock code:	<i>ATP12482H</i>
Printed by:	<i>DPA Document Printing Australia</i>
AEShareNet Code:	<i>FfE</i>
Print Version No:	<i>3.0</i>
Release Date:	<i>13 September 2006</i>

Before using this volume

The Textiles Clothing and Footwear Training Package comprises 19 volumes as follows:

Volume 1	General Information
Volume 2	Textile Production
Volume 3	Early Stage Wool Processing
Volume 4	Cotton Ginning
Volume 5	Textile Fabrication
Volume 6	Clothing Production
Volume 7	Millinery
Volume 8	Footwear Production
Volume 9	Footwear Repair
Volume 10	Leather Goods Production
Volume 11	Hide, Skin and Leather
Volume 12	Laundry Operations
Volume 13	Dry Cleaning Operations
Volume 14	TCF Mechanic/Technician
Volume 15	Diplomas
Volume 16	Generic Units
Volume 17	Medical Grade Footwear
Volume 18	Technical Textiles and Nonwovens
Volume 19	Applied Fashion Design and Technology

Users of Textiles Clothing and Footwear Training Package Version 3 will need to use Volume 1 and Volume 16 in conjunction with the sector volumes. Volume 1 contains information on Training Packages, specific details about Textiles Clothing and Footwear Training Package LMT00 Version 3, the qualifications frameworks for all sectors, a Users Guide and the Assessment Guidelines. Volume 16 contains TCF generic units.

Current version

The Textiles Clothing and Footwear Training Package is not a static document. Changes are made periodically to reflect the latest industry practices.

Before commencing any form of training or assessment, you must ensure delivery is from the *current version* of the Training Package.

To ensure you are complying with this requirement:

- Check the Print Version Number just below the copyright statement on the imprint pages or in the footer of your current Training Package.
- Access the ATP website (<http://www.atpl.net.au>) and check the latest Print Number.
- In cases where the Print Version Number is later than yours, the Print Version Modification History in the Training Package sample on the ATP website will indicate the changes that have been made.

The Modification History is available in Volume 1 of this Training Package as well as on the website of the developer of the Training Package: Manufacturing Skills Australia
<http://www.mskills.com.au>.

Units of competency covered in this volume

This volume contains units of competency specific to the following qualifications:

LMT21706	Certificate II in Applied Fashion Design and Technology
LMT31406	Certificate III in Applied Fashion Design and Technology
LMT41006	Certificate IV in Applied Fashion Design and Technology
LMT50306	Diploma of Applied Fashion Design and Technology
LMT60306	Advanced Diploma of Applied Fashion Design and Technology

Units of competency that do not have LMT as part of the code have been imported from other Training Packages. A list of the units of competency imported from other Training Packages is provided in Volume 1. Current versions of these units are available from the **National Training Information Service at: <http://www.ntis.gov.au>**.

The National Training Information Service (<http://www.ntis.gov.au>) also displays any changes in Units of Competency and the packaging of qualifications.

The term 'Unit of Competency' is sometimes referred to as 'unit'.

Applied Fashion Design and Technology Units of competency

LMTFD2001A Design and produce a simple garment	1
LMTFD2002A Apply printing techniques to produce indigenous textile designs	5
LMTFD2003A Apply dyeing techniques to produce indigenous textile designs	9
LMTFD2004A Work within an indigenous cultural framework	13
LMTFD2005A Identify design process for fashion designs	19
LMTFD3001A Market design product to local outlets.....	25
LMTFD3002A Design and produce indigenous printed textiles to a brief.....	29
LMTFD3003A Prepare design concept for a simple garment	33
LMTFD3004A Draw a trade drawing for fashion design	37
LMTFD4001A Apply design studio process	43
LMTFD4002A Apply principles of colour theory to fashion design development	49
LMTFD4003A Assist in preparation of preliminary design concepts	53
LMTFD4004A Calculate cost estimates for fashion products	57
LMTFD4005A Communicate and sell design concepts	61
LMTFD4006A Interact and network with fashion industry participants	67
LMTFD4007A Conduct quality assurance for patterns and garments.....	73
LMTFD4008A Construct stock size block for garment to meet size and fit specifications	77
LMTFD4009A Create and edit digital embroidery designs.....	81
LMTFD4010A Create pattern to meet design specifications applying advanced patternmaking principles	85
LMTFD4011A Cut fabrics for prototype designs.....	91
LMTFD4012A Develop product specifications for fashion design	95
LMTFD4013A Grade 2D patterns	99
LMTFD4014A Identify influences on contemporary fashion designs and construction techniques ...	103
LMTFD4015A Create pattern from block to meet customer specifications	107
LMTFD4016A Sew design prototypes	113
LMTFD4017A Source materials and resources for production of fashion designs.....	119
LMTFD4018A Use and apply sizing systems appropriate for fashion design	125
LMTFD4019A Use colourisation techniques on fabrics	129
LMTFD4020A Use electronic fashion design tools.....	133
LMTFD4021A Drape fabrics to make patterns	137
LMTFD5001A Design bras and swimwear	143
LMTFD5002A Develop and test patterns for bras and swimwear.....	149
LMTFD5003A Analyse fit model.....	155
LMTFD5004A Develop marketing plans for fashion products	161
LMTFD5005A Manipulate fabrics to create new finishes.....	167
LMTFD5006A Evaluate fashion designs against set criteria.....	171

LMTFD5007A Analyse influences on contemporary fashion designs	175
LMTFD5008A Conduct fashion design purchasing	179
LMTFD5009A Cost design production.....	183
LMTFD5010A Develop and present design concepts within specific guidelines.....	187
LMTFD5011A Produce fashion illustrations	193
LMTFD5012A Perform contour draping	199
LMTFD5013A Develop merchandising plans for fashion products	203
LMTFD5014A Construct complex blocks for fashion garments	209
LMTFD5015A Develop patterns for complex fashion garments.....	215
LMTFD5016A Grade shaped patterns	221
LMTFD5017A Apply design studio processes to meet client brief	225
LMTFD5018A Determine and specify advanced construction processes.....	231
LMTFD5019A Analyse individual fit and make pattern alterations.....	235
LMTFD6001A Evaluate commercial viability of designs	239
LMTFD6002A Manage product development of fashion designs	243
LMTFD6003A Manage fashion design process.....	249
LMTFD6004A Manage advanced patternmaking processes	255
LMTFD6005A Drape structured over-garments	261
LMTFD6006A Develop a fashion range.....	267
LMTFD6007A Implement specialised patternmaking technologies.....	273
LMTFD6008A Apply studio processes to create and produce designs for commercial production...	277
LMTFD6009A Analyse fashion industry textiles to guide commercial development	283

LMTFD2001A Design and produce a simple garment

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to design and produce a simple garment.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to the design, planning and production of a simple garment. The production of the garment may involve the use of a domestic sewing machine and overlocker. Designs may involve modification of existing blocks or patterns.</p> <p>Work is conducted according to defined procedures and would not be applied in a large scale production environment. The unit is suitable for project-related work as part of a VET in Schools program</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Design <i>garment</i>	<p>1.1 Influences and inspirations for design are identified and explored.</p> <p>1.2 Storyboard or sketches are produced to assist in development of ideas and design concepts.</p> <p>1.3 Design principles are applied to design concepts.</p> <p>1.4 Production requirements for design concepts are identified.</p> <p>1.5 Ideas and design concepts are discussed with <i>appropriate people</i> for review and development.</p> <p>1.6 Design concepts are modified and confirmed.</p>
2 Prepare for garment production	<p>2.1 Pattern or blocks are selected to modify for design.</p> <p>2.2 Pattern is developed for garment production according to size and design requirements.</p> <p>2.3 Fabric, <i>materials</i>, tools and <i>equipment</i> are selected and prepared.</p> <p>2.4 Equipment is checked to ensure correct operation.</p> <p>2.5 Ability of tools and equipment to achieve plan is assessed.</p> <p>2.5 Additional resources that may be required are identified.</p>
3 Produce garment	<p>3.1 Equipment is used to produce garment according to pattern and required <i>OH&S practices</i>.</p>

- 3.2 Garment is checked against pattern and design.
- 3.3 Minor process faults are identified and corrected where necessary.
- 3.4 Production techniques and design are continuously reviewed in an iterative manner to make improvements.
- 4 Complete production process
 - 4.1 Garment is finished according to design requirements.
 - 4.2 Garment is assessed against design and pattern.
 - 4.3 ***Garment faults*** are rectified.
 - 4.4 Area and equipment is cleaned.
 - 4.5 Tools and equipment are stored as required.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Garment may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• accessories• straight seamed, draw string skirt• T-shirt• smock dress• other garment requiring a small range of sewing techniques and use of a domestic machine and overlocker |
| Appropriate people may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• trainers• colleagues• mentors |
| Equipment may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• pins• scissors• domestic sewing machine• overlocker• needle and thread• marker or chalk |
| Materials may be | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• fabric• cotton• buttons, components |
| OH&S practices | <p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• manual handling techniques• standard operating procedures• personal protective equipment• safe materials handling• taking of rest breaks• ergonomic arrangement of workplaces• following marked walkways• safe storage of equipment• housekeeping |

Garment faults may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • reporting accidents and incidents • other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • holes • inconsistent sewing • broken thread

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • design a simple garment • use sewing machine safely and effectively • modify blocks to make patterns • make minor adjustments • check garment against pattern
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	<p>Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.</p>
Context for assessment	<p>Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.</p>
Interdependent assessment	<p>This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.</p>
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • principles and elements of design • block modification techniques • techniques in using a sewing machine • sizing requirements • fabric suitability • typical fault conditions and related fault-finding procedures • types and styles of threads • simple equipment maintenance techniques • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices

Underpinning skills

Demonstrates skills to:

- apply design principles
- check equipment
- prepare fabric and thread
- use a sewing machine
- start and stop equipment
- monitor production
- recognise and rectify faults or problems as required
- clean equipment as required
- read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material
- maintain accurate records
- communicate within the workplace
- sequence operations
- meet specifications
- clarify and check task-related information
- carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

1 – Perform tasks effectively

2 – Manage tasks

3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Desired design results are discussed with trainer.	2
Collect, analyse and organise information	Design development requirements are identified.	2
Plan and organise activities	Fabric and pattern are selected and prepared for production.	2
Work with others and in teams	Tasks are completed and reviewed with others throughout the process.	2
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Block modification requirements are identified.	2
Solve problems	Process from design to development is planned and tested for viability.	2
Use technology	Equipment is used efficiently and safely.	1

LMTFD2002A Apply printing techniques to produce indigenous textile designs

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to apply fabric printing techniques used to produce indigenous textile designs.
Prerequisites	LMTCL2003A Identify fibres and fabrics
Application	<p>The unit applies to the use of stencil, lino cut, block, stamp or silk screen printing techniques to produce culturally specific designs and artworks for fabrics.</p> <p>The unit should be customised to accommodate the image use and design protocols and techniques specific to an Aboriginal or Torres Strait Islander community.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Describe printed designs	<p>1.1 Application of elements and principles of design in Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander artwork are identified.</p> <p>1.2 Works of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander artists and textile designers are described.</p> <p>1.3 Relationships to own design work are identified.</p> <p>1.4 Protocols for development of culturally specific designs are identified and applied.</p> <p>1.5 Application of design concepts in printed fabrics is identified.</p>
2 Prepare for printing	<p>2.1 Fabric to be printed is identified and prepared for printing.</p> <p>2.2 Printing processes and practices used by local community are described.</p> <p>2.3 Printing technique to be used is selected.</p> <p>2.4 Effects of printing on fabric are identified.</p> <p>2.5 Tools and equipment to be used are prepared.</p>
3 Print fabrics	<p>3.1 Printing technique is applied to fabric according to OH&S practices.</p> <p>3.2 Tools and equipment are used effectively and safely to achieve desired result.</p>

3.3 Process is analysed to assess outcome.

3.4 Technique is modified as required.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Protocols means	<ul style="list-style-type: none">the set of rules applying to behaviour/practices in a specific cultural context
Fabrics may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">fabrics to be used for garments, textile products or accessoriesfabrics in completed products
Printing technique may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">stencillino cutblockstampsilk screen
Tools and equipment may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">screens and carousel for printingblockslinobrushesknivesbucket, sink or containermixersdyes, inks
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">manual handling techniquesstandard operating procedurespersonal protective equipmentsafe materials handlingtaking of rest breaksergonomic arrangement of workplacesfollowing marked walkwayssafe storage of equipmenthousekeepingreporting accidents and incidentsother OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">recognise and apply cultural protocols for image use, design and printing techniquesdetermine effects of printing fabrics
------------------------------	---

Consistency in performance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • use printing techniques to achieve design effects • apply safe practices and procedures <p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • characteristics of fabrics • information resources on fibres and fabrics • principles and elements of design • culturally specific design and printing practices • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • identify design elements • identify fabric characteristics • use tools and equipment associated with printing fabrics • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records • communicate within the workplace • sequence operations • meet specifications • clarify and check task-related information • carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

1 – Perform tasks effectively

2 – Manage tasks

3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Printed effect to be achieved is described.	2
Collect, analyse and organise information	Information on fabrics is collected to determine fabric response to printing.	2
Plan and organise activities	Tools and equipment are selected and prepared for printing.	2
Work with others and in teams	Members of the community are consulted to inform printing processes.	2
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Actual results of printing are compared to expected results.	2
Solve problems	Printing techniques are modified to improve results.	2
Use technology	Printing tools and techniques are used effectively.	2

LMTFD2003A Apply dyeing techniques to produce indigenous textile designs

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to apply fabric dyeing techniques used in indigenous textile designs.
Prerequisites	LMTCL2003A Identify fibres and fabrics
Application	<p>The unit applies to the use of tie dye, and silk dyeing techniques to produce culturally specific designs and artworks for fabrics.</p> <p>The unit should be customised to accommodate the image use and design protocols and techniques specific to an Aboriginal or Torres Strait Islander community.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Describe dyed designs	<p>1.1 Application of elements and principles of design in Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander artwork are identified.</p> <p>1.2 Works of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander artists and textile designers are described.</p> <p>1.3 Relationships to own design work are identified.</p> <p>1.4 Protocols for development of culturally specific designs are identified and applied.</p> <p>1.5 Application of design concepts in dyed fabrics is identified.</p>
2 Prepare for dyeing	<p>2.1 Fabric to be dyed is identified and prepared.</p> <p>2.2 Dyeing processes and practices used by local community are described.</p> <p>2.3 Dyeing technique and dye type to be used is selected.</p> <p>2.4 Effects of dyeing on fabric are identified.</p> <p>2.5 Tools and equipment to be used are prepared.</p> <p>2.6 Dye formulas are selected, measured and mixed to achieve desired result.</p> <p>2.7 Swatches of dyed fabric are used to experiment with and confirm dye recipe.</p>
3 Dye fabrics	3.1 Dyeing technique is applied to fabric according to OH&S practices .

- 3.2 Tools and equipment are used effectively and safely to achieve desired result.
- 3.3 Process is analysed to assess outcome.
- 3.4 Technique is modified as required.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Protocols means	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• rules applying to behaviour/practices in a specific cultural context
Fabrics may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• fabrics to be used for garments, textile products or accessories• fabrics in completed products
Dyeing technique may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• tie dye• batik• silk dyeing
Type may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• silk dyes• natural dyes• reactive dyes
Tools and equipment may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• gloves• bucket, sink or container• mixers• dyes, inks
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• manual handling techniques• standard operating procedures• personal protective equipment• safe materials handling• taking of rest breaks• ergonomic arrangement of workplaces• following marked walkways• safe storage of equipment• housekeeping• reporting accidents and incidents• other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• recognise and apply cultural protocols for image use, design and dyeing techniques• determine effects of dyeing fabrics
------------------------------	---

Consistency in performance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • use dyeing techniques to achieve design effects • apply safe practices and procedures <p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • characteristics of fabrics • information resources on fibres and fabrics • principles and elements of design • culturally specific design and dyeing practices • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • describe design elements • identify fabric characteristics • use tools and equipment associated with dyeing fabrics • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records • communicate within the workplace • sequence operations • meet specifications • clarify and check task-related information • carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Dyed effect to be achieved is described.	2
Collect, analyse and organise information	Information on fabrics is collected to determine fabric response to dyeing.	2
Plan and organise activities	Tools and equipment are selected and prepared for dyeing.	2
Work with others and in teams	Members of the community are consulted to inform dyeing processes.	2
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Actual results of printing are compared to expected results.	2
Solve problems	Dyeing techniques are modified to improve results.	2
Use technology	Dyeing tools and techniques are used effectively.	2

LMTFD2004A Work within an indigenous cultural framework

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to identify and apply key cultural practices and processes used for the design and development of textile works, garments and accessories.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit is intended to apply to Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander students who wish to produce culturally specific textile products. The unit covers the integration of culturally specific forms and processes into textile production processes.</p> <p>The unit should be customised to accommodate the image use and design protocols and techniques specific to an Aboriginal or Torres Strait Islander community.</p> <p>Application and assessment of this unit must be conducted according to the customs and protocols of the relevant communities.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Access information on cultural influences	<p>1.1 Information sources on local cultures relevant to individual are identified.</p> <p>1.2 Information is accessed appropriately according to cultural practices.</p> <p>1.3 Influences on creation and development of textile works, garments and accessories are identified.</p>
2 Apply relevant work and cultural practices	<p>2.1 Relevant practices common to design and development of textile works, garments and accessories are identified.</p> <p>2.2 Cultural ethics and law in relation to production of art and design work are identified.</p> <p>2.3 Personal rights, responsibilities and legal obligations relevant to design and production of cultural textile works, garments and accessories are determined and complied with.</p> <p>2.4 Customary business procedures, structure and organisation of relevant Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander communities are identified and compared to standard industry practices.</p>

- 2.5 **Protocols** for culturally specific work practices are determined and applied.
- 3 Identify production processes and supply chains for cultural works
- 3.1 **Materials** used in design and development of textile works, garments and accessories are identified.
- 3.2 **Production processes** for converting materials into products are identified.
- 3.3 Opportunities for production and sale of textile works, garments and accessories are explored.
- 3.4 **Significant people** to support design and development of textile works, garments and accessories are identified.
- 3.5 **Supply chains** for textile works, garments and accessories are identified.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Information sources may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • community elders • family members • artworks and artists • stories • community members • government agencies and services • written, electronic and audio visual material • art centres and galleries |
| Information may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • stories • creative processes and practices • symbols • cultural significance of stories, themes, processes and practices • protocols and procedure • region, environment • cultural rites • artworks • economic systems |
| Practices may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • sourcing and uses of raw materials • dyeing • printing • use of tools and equipment • use of culturally significant themes and stories • involvement and endorsements from significant people • respect for traditional laws and values |
| Protocols refers to | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the set of rules applying to behaviour or practices that apply to a specific cultural context |
| Materials could include | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • natural, man-made and synthetic fibres and fabrics • animal hides |

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • componentry such as buttons and zips • ochres and other sources of natural dyes • acrylic colours and dyes • objects used for print designs
Production processes includes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • textile printing and dyeing • making patterns • marking and cutting fabric • sewing • finishing • colour mixing
Supply chains includes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • concept of product flow from raw material to production, distribution, marketing and sale • customers • sales, marketing and distribution suppliers • production suppliers • business support and administrators
Significant people may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • community and family members • people with skills in design, production, marketing or business • trainers, educators, mentors • customers • funders or business supporters
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual handling techniques • standard operating procedures • personal protective equipment • safe materials handling • taking of rest breaks • ergonomic arrangement of workplaces • following marked walkways • safe storage of equipment • housekeeping • reporting accidents and incidents • other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • recognise and apply cultural practices • identify significant cultural information and influences • apply cultural values and expressions in designs and productions • use cultural processes and techniques • identify relevant legislation
------------------------------	---

Consistency in	Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:
----------------	---

performance	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• organising work• completing tasks• identifying improvements• using workplace practices• using OH&S practices• recording and reporting accidents and incidents• assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes• recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions• completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	Demonstrates knowledge of: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• cultural values and systems• cultural practices and procedures• protocols on the accessing and expression of culturally specific information• OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures• quality practices• workplace practices• recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	Demonstrates skills to: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• identify key people and community representatives• access information as required• question and make inquiries• recognise cultural influences• read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material• maintain accurate records• communicate within the workplace• sequence operations• meet specifications• clarify and check task-related information• carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Key stories and themes are described.	1
Collect, analyse and organise information	Questions are used to source information.	1
Plan and organise activities	Production processes for items are identified.	1
Work with others and in teams	Cultural protocols are identified and respected.	1
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Funding system for textile works is identified.	1
Solve problems	Significance of traditional laws is identified for textile production.	1
Use technology	Production techniques for textile items are identified.	1
Understand cultural issues	Personal rights, responsibilities and legal obligations relevant to design and production are determined and applied	2

LMTFD2005A Identify design process for fashion designs

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to identify the elements and principles of the design process for fashion, including colour.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to the identification of the elements and principles of design, and how they impact on the process of producing fashion items. It includes impact of colour on the design process in a production environment.</p> <p>This unit applies to work in a production environment where design decisions impact on the work.</p> <p>Work is conducted according to defined procedures.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Identify <i>design process</i>	1.1 Steps in responding to a design brief are identified. 1.2 Commercial considerations in producing a design are identified.
2 Identify elements and principles of design	2.1 <i>Elements of design</i> are identified. 2.2 <i>Principles of design</i> are identified.
3 Prepare workstation	3.1 <i>Tools and equipment</i> are selected and prepared. 3.2 Workbench and seating are set up according to <i>OH&S practices</i> .
4 Identify characteristics of colour and prepare colour chart	4.1 Colour is investigated and <i>dimensions</i> are identified. 4.2 Relationship between value and intensity is identified and a colour chart is painted. 4.3 Colour wheel is prepared according to colour mixing principles. 4.4 Shade scale is prepared according to colour mixing principles. 4.5 <i>Colour matching</i> for production is implemented. 4.6 Colour charts are inspected or checked against quality standards.

4.7 Any changes or adjustments are carried out as required.

4.8 Documentation relating to colour charts is completed.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Design process	<p>The design process for this unit comprises an awareness level understanding of the process to respond to a work brief, including researching sources of information, creating art and design work including prototypes and first drafts, and using design tools such as illustrations, software programs, modelling materials, etc. It also includes an awareness of commercial concepts such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• type of production• costs• timing• equipment – available and needed• marketing and sales• availability of raw materials and required resources
Elements of design may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• line• shape/silhouette• colour• texture• value
Principles of design may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• repetition• pattern• gradation• rhythm• radiation• harmony• contrast• dominance• proportion• balance• unity
Tools and equipment may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• colour wheel• acrylic paints• paint brushes• cartridge paper• crayons• watercolours• pencils

OH&S practices	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • colour software and painting programs, including colour features of CAD programs • computers <p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual handling techniques • standard operating procedures • personal protective equipment • safe materials handling • taking of rest breaks • ergonomic arrangement of workplaces • following marked walkways • safe storage of equipment • housekeeping • reporting accidents and incidents • other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise
Dimensions of colour include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • value/tone • hue • chroma/intensity/clarity
Colour matching involves	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • selecting the correct linings, buttons, zips and thread to exactly match the garment

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • prepare workstation before commencing work • prepare a colour wheel • prepare a value chart • using a given piece of fabric, colour match all components to complement, such as zips, buttons, thread, linings and other appropriate trims • use appropriate tools and equipment • apply all quality criteria, such as dimension and neatness, in the completion of the charts • convey all necessary instructions or information by the appropriate use of notes • apply OH&S practices in work operations • maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work

	processes
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions• completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	Demonstrates knowledge of: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• characteristics of fabrics used for garment construction• sequence of operations• OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures• quality practices• workplace practices• recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	Demonstrates skills to: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• use software and computing equipment in the investigation of colour• colour shapes using appropriate tools and equipment• read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material• maintain accurate records• communicate within the workplace• sequence operations• meet specifications• clarify and check task-related information• carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Design processes are discussed with supervisor.	1
Collect, analyse and organise information	Design principles and relationship with production are identified.	1
Plan and organise activities	Painting tools and equipment are selected.	1

Work with others and in teams	Activities are conducted in cooperation with others.	1
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Quantity of colour mixing is determined.	1
Solve problems	Colour matching problems are identified.	1
Use technology	Workplace equipment is used effectively and safely.	1

LMTFD3001A Market design product to local outlets

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to market fashion design products to local sales outlets or direct to the customer.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to the presentation and sale of a single or small range of fashion design products to local outlets such as markets, galleries, shops and art centres or direct to the customer.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Identify key elements of design	<p>1.1 Features and benefits of design product are identified.</p> <p>1.2 Key customers for design product and their <i>purchasing behaviour</i> are identified.</p> <p>1.3 Price of design product is determined in consultation with <i>appropriate people</i>.</p>
2 Identify sales outlets	<p>2.1 Potential <i>sales outlets</i> for design product are identified.</p> <p>2.2 Customers and product range of outlets are identified.</p> <p>2.3 Suitability of sales outlets is assessed.</p> <p>2.4 Sales outlets are selected.</p>
3 Prepare design product for presentation	<p>3.1 Presentation of design product is selected to maximise appearance.</p> <p>3.2 <i>Promotional tools</i> are used to support design sales.</p> <p>3.3 Costings of promotional options are determined.</p>
4 Confirm sale conditions	<p>4.1 Product price is negotiated with outlet or customer.</p> <p>4.2 Opportunities for variations in design are explored.</p> <p>4.3 Supply arrangements are confirmed.</p> <p>4.4 Sale conditions are documented as required.</p>

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Appropriate people may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• trainer• customers• sales outlet• colleagues• mentor
Purchasing behaviour may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• where they shop• when they shop• acceptable price range• product performance expectations• need to try garments on• need to return items
Sales outlets may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• markets• galleries• shops• art centres
Promotional tools may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• gimmicks• labelling• special offers• packaging• product information• display props• fliers• signage
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• manual handling techniques• standard operating procedures• personal protective equipment• safe materials handling• taking of rest breaks• ergonomic arrangement of workplaces• following marked walkways• safe storage of equipment• housekeeping• reporting accidents and incidents• other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • identify appropriate options for sale of product • promote design features • negotiate with customers
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • concepts of features and benefits • location of local sales outlets • sales practices in local community • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • select sales processes • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records • communicate within the workplace • sequence operations • meet specifications • clarify and check task-related information • carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Pricing of product is explored with others.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Information on local outlets is gathered and reviewed.	3
Plan and organise activities	Presentation of design product is planned.	2
Work with others and in teams	Communication skills are used to negotiate sales conditions.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Costings are calculated for to assist in determining product price.	2
Solve problems	Changes to design are discussed with customers.	3
Use technology	Computers are used to generate promotional tools	2

LMTFD3002A Design and produce indigenous printed textiles to a brief

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to respond to a brief for the design and production of printed textiles that reflect indigenous Australian cultures.
Prerequisites	<p>LMTFD2002A Apply printing techniques to produce indigenous textile designs</p> <p>LMTFD2003A Apply dyeing techniques to produce indigenous textile designs</p> <p>LMTFD2004A Work within an indigenous cultural framework</p>
Application	<p>The unit was designed for use by indigenous Australians and applies to use of culturally specific designs, artworks and production processes and techniques for printed fabrics or textile products. Textile products may involve more than one printing technique.</p> <p>The unit should be customised to accommodate the image use and design protocols and techniques specific to an Aboriginal or Torres Strait Islander community.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Design printed textiles to a <i>design brief</i>	<p>1.1 Design brief is interpreted to identify key requirements</p> <p>1.2 Relevant people are consulted to determine requirements for printed textiles.</p> <p>1.3 Protocols for development of culturally specific designs are identified and applied.</p> <p>1.4 Options for use of images are considered.</p> <p>1.5 Desired effects are identified and experimented with to develop design concepts.</p> <p>1.6 Design concepts and techniques are assessed for their ability to produce and replicate desired effects.</p> <p>1.7 Textile design is selected.</p> <p>1.8 Design is reviewed against brief and principles of design and assessed for commercial response.</p>

- | | |
|---------------------------|--|
| 2 Prepare for production | 2.1 <i>Textile</i> to be printed is identified and prepared for printing. |
| | 2.2 <i>Printing processes and practices</i> to be used are selected. |
| | 2.3 <i>Tools and equipment</i> to be used are prepared. |
| 3 Produce printed textile | 3.1 Printing technique is applied according to <i>OH&S practices</i> . |
| | 3.2 Tools and equipment are used effectively and safely to achieve desired result. |
| | 3.3 Process is analysed to assess outcome in relation to brief. |
| | 3.4 Techniques and/or design elements are modified as required. |

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

- | | |
|--|--|
| Design brief may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• subject matter, style, effects, colour, size, fabric, quantity, timeframe |
| Relevant people may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• clients• elders, traditional owners and others with cultural and social authority• supervisors, colleagues and other workers |
| Protocols means | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• the set of rules applying to behaviour/practices in a specific cultural context |
| Textile may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• fabrics used for garments, textile products or accessories• fabrics in completed products |
| Printing processes and practices may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• stencil• lino cut• block• stamp• silk screen• uses of natural and acrylic paints• uses of natural items for stamps |
| Tools and equipment may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• screens and carousel for printing• blocks• lino• brushes• knives• bucket, sink or container• mixers• dyes, inks |
| OH&S practices | <p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• manual handling techniques• standard operating procedures• personal protective equipment• safe materials handling |

- taking of rest breaks
- ergonomic arrangement of workplaces
- following marked walkways
- safe storage of equipment
- housekeeping
- reporting accidents and incidents
- other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • recognise and comply with cultural, design and technical requirements in producing printed textiles to a brief • create own designs • apply safe practices and procedures
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • culturally specific practices relating to use of images, design and production • design inspirations • characteristics of fabrics • information resources on fibres and fabrics • principles and elements of design • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • control design elements

- resolve design and production problems
- identify fabric characteristics
- use tools and equipment associated with printing fabrics
- read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material
- maintain accurate records
- communicate within the workplace
- sequence operations
- meet specifications
- clarify and check task-related information
- carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Printed effect to be achieved is described.	2
Collect, analyse and organise information	Information on fabrics is collected to determine fabric response to printing.	2
Plan and organise activities	Tools and equipment is selected and prepared for printing.	2
Work with others and in teams	Members of the community are consulted to inform printing processes.	2
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Actual results of printing are compared to expected results.	2
Solve problems	Printing techniques are modified to improve results.	2
Use technology	Printing tools and techniques are used effectively.	2

LMTFD3003A Prepare design concept for a simple garment

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to identify design concepts and trends and interpret these into simple garment designs.
Prerequisites	LMTCL2011A Draw and interpret a basic sketch LMTFD2005A Identify design process for fashion designs
Application	<p>The unit applies to working with the patternmaker or designer to identify design concepts and trends and interpret them for use in clothing production. Investigation into the 20th century, including historical influences and trends will direct the process.</p> <p>Work is supervised and may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Prepare workstation	1.1 Workbench and seating are set up according to <i>OH&S practices</i> . 1.2 <i>Drawing tools and equipment</i> are selected. 1.3 Tools and equipment are set out to facilitate effective work practice.
2 Identify influences on fashion design	2.1 <i>Fashion trends</i> from 20th century are identified. 2.2 <i>Significant events</i> of 20th century are identified and related to fashion changes. 2.3 Fashion cycles are identified.
3 Identify how fashion is influenced by <i>design principles</i>	3.1 Garments are identified that contain different design principles. 3.2 A series of trade sketches are drawn to illustrate design principles.
4 Interpret design brief to develop garment concept	4.1 Specifications and are identified and followed. 4.2 Style of garment is identified. 4.3 Storyboard is developed for designed garments.
5 Complete work	5.1 Sketches are inspected against quality standards. 5.2 Any changes or adjustments are carried out as required. 5.3 Documentation relating to storyboard is completed.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• manual handling techniques• standard operating procedures• personal protective equipment• safe materials handling• taking of rest breaks• ergonomic arrangement of workplaces• following marked walkways• safe storage of equipment• housekeeping• reporting accidents and incidents• other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise
Drawing tools and equipment include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• A3 layout pad• pencils with HB leads• pencil sharpener• kneadable eraser• templates
Fashion trends may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• skirt hem lengths• sleeve shapes• trousers widths• lycra• hipsters
Significant events may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• wars• rock and roll• hippy era• technological developments, e.g. plastics
Principles of design may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• repetition• gradation• rhythm• radiation• harmony• contrast• dominance• proportion• balance• unity

Garments may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • skirts • trousers/pants • shirts/blouses • dresses
Storyboards may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • trade sketches of new garment designs • fabric swatches • specifications

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • prepare workstation before commencing drawing • develop and draw simple designs based on design principles • use appropriate tools and equipment • applying all quality criteria, such as dimension and neatness, in the completion of the sketch and storyboard • conveying all necessary instructions/information by the appropriate use of notes on the storyboard • apply OH&S practices in work operations • maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	<p>Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.</p>
Context for assessment	<p>Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.</p>
Interdependent assessment	<p>This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.</p>
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • characteristics of fabrics used for garment construction • style features • sequence of operations • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices

Underpinning skills	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• workplace practices• recording and reporting practices
	Demonstrates skills to: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• draw shapes using a pencil• read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material• maintain accurate records• communicate within the workplace• sequence operations• meet specifications• clarify and check task-related information• carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

1 – Perform tasks effectively

2 – Manage tasks

3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Design brief is interpreted and discussed with supervisor.	2
Collect, analyse and organise information	Significant events of the 20th century are identified and analysed in relation to fashion changes.	2
Plan and organise activities	Drawing tools are selected and prepared.	2
Work with others and in teams	Design concept is communicated with appropriate personnel.	2
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Use mathematical proportions to complete sketch accurately	2
Solve problems	Sketches are checked for accuracy and alterations made	2
Use technology	Equipment is used correctly	2

LMTFD3004A Draw a trade drawing for fashion design

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to draw an accurate trade or technical drawing based on specifications and a design.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to the patternmaking or design room, where accurate trade or technical drawings are required to interpret and clarify a garment design.</p> <p>Work is supervised may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Prepare <i>drawing tools and equipment</i>	1.1 Drawing tools and equipment are selected. 1.2 Drawing tools and equipment are prepared for use.
2 Prepare workstation	2.1 Workbench and seating are set up according to <i>OH&S practices</i> . 2.2 Tools and equipment are set out to facilitate effective work practice.
3 Interpret design brief or specifications	3.1 <i>Trade drawing</i> requirements are investigated and identified from Criteria are design brief. 3.2 Specifications are identified and followed as required. 3.3 Style of <i>garment</i> is identified. 3.4 <i>Garment features</i> required to complete trade drawing are identified. 3.5 <i>Detailing and special effects</i> are identified for use on Criteria are trade drawing.
4 Use template to produce trade drawing	4.1 <i>Quality criteria</i> are used in trade drawing. 4.2 <i>Template</i> to draw trade drawing is selected. 4.2 <i>Lines</i> are drawn accurately to complete drawing, using a ruler where necessary. 4.2 Working drawing is produced to correctly represent a pattern piece or garment. 4.3 Relevant parts of drawing are identified and labelled.
5 Complete work	5.1 Trade drawing is inspected against quality standards. 5.2 Any changes or adjustments to trade drawing are carried out as required. 5.3 Documentation relating to trade drawing is completed and stored.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Drawing tools and equipment include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• paper• layout pad• pencils – mechanical may be used – various grades• pencil sharpener• kneadable eraser• ruler• black felt tip pens• portfolios• templates
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• manual handling techniques• standard operating procedures• personal protective equipment• safe materials handling• taking of rest breaks• ergonomic arrangement of workplaces• following marked walkways• safe storage of equipment• housekeeping• reporting accidents and incidents• other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise
Garments may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• skirts• trousers/pants• shirts/blouses• dresses• coats• lingerie
Garment features may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• fitting and seam lines• style lines• yokes, gores and panels• necklines• sleeves• collars• zips and buttons• pockets• waistbands

Details and special effects may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • top stitching and edge stitching • pin tucks and tucks • frills and gathers • pleats • drapes • fabric effects – lace, fur, knitwear • bows and ties • quilting • elastication
Trade drawings are	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • also known as working drawings • accurate analytical drawings of garments that are detailed to show how the garment is constructed and finished • are used by designers and patternmakers to inform production – part of specification sheets
Quality criteria includes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • proportion • perspective • symmetry and balance • fabric performance • detailing • neatness
Templates may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • front and back full body view – ladies, men's and children's • upper torso/lower torso • swimwear/lingerie • full body with arms and legs extended from torso • 3/4 turned
Lines may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • straight, angled, curved, pointed, dotted, dashed and circled

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • prepare workstation before commencing drawing • use appropriate tools and equipment to produce working drawing • applying all quality criteria, such as dimension and neatness, in the completion of the working drawing • conveying all necessary instructions/information by the appropriate use of notes on the drawing • apply OH&S practices in work operations • maintain accurate records • accurately draw trade drawings of a range of garments as detailed in the design brief or specifications • accurately label drawings with appropriate notes relating to construction and design features • demonstrate trade drawings in proportion and technically correct, with all details, including front and back view, shown
------------------------------	--

Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• organising work• completing tasks• identifying improvements• using workplace practices• using OH&S practices• recording and reporting accidents and incidents• assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes• recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions• completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	<p>Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.</p>
Context for assessment	<p>Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.</p>
Interdependent assessment	<p>This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.</p>
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• patternmaking and design terminology• style features• fabric performance characteristics• quality standards• sequence of operations• OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures• quality practices• workplace practices• recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• ability to draw lines freehand to create shapes• read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material• maintain accurate records• communicate within the workplace• sequence operations• meet specifications• clarify and check task-related information• carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

1 – Perform tasks effectively

2 – Manage tasks

3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Accurate trade drawing informs other production areas how to produce garment.	2
Collect, analyse and organise information	Design specifications are received and interpreted.	1
Plan and organise activities	Drawing tools and equipment are selected and prepared	2
Work with others and in teams	Work with the designer and patternmaker to develop an accurate trade drawing.	2
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Proportion and accurate measurements are used to develop the trade drawing.	2
Solve problems	Trade drawings are checked for accuracy and adjustments made as required.	2
Use technology	Templates are used to assist drawing design.	2

LMTFD4001A Apply design studio process

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to apply design studio processes when interpreting and responding to a specified brief through the production of a fashion design product.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit is an holistic unit that requires the integration of skills across the design process and focuses on the use and experimentation of design studio processes to result in the production of a fashion design product which meets a specified brief. The design brief is determined by a trainer or supervisor and may be contextualised to a particular context within the fashion industry. The design brief includes clear specifications for the product design.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Interpret design brief	1.1 <i>Specifications</i> of design brief are identified. 1.2 Purposes of product and end user expectations are identified. 1.3 <i>Characteristics of target market</i> are identified. 1.4 Understanding of design brief is checked and further clarification gained as required.
2 Research relevant information	2.1 <i>Relevant information</i> is identified and accessed to guide design and production process. 2.2 Information is analysed and applied to design concept development and production. 2.3 Any additional expertise required for project is identified.
3 Develop and refine design concept	3.1 Preliminary concepts are identified. 3.2 <i>Design processes</i> are used to experiment with and develop design concepts. 3.3 Options are evaluated against design brief specifications. 3.4 Criterion and <i>selection processes</i> are used to refine concept options. 3.5 Design concept is selected and developed.
4 Present design for	4.1 <i>Communication tools</i> are used to present design concept to

feedback	<i>appropriate personnel</i> for feedback.
	4.2 Feedback is received and considered in line with design brief.
	4.3 Design concept is modified and improved where possible.
5 Prepare for production	5.1 All components required for production are identified.
	5.2 Technical aspects of production are identified.
	5.3 Specification sheet is completed to guide production.
	5.4 Resources and production requirements are identified and sourced.
	5.5 Plan is developed to guide production.
6 Develop design pattern	6.1 Blocks are selected to meet design brief.
	6.2 Blocks are modified to create patterns that meet design requirements and specifications.
	6.3 Pattern is made according to industry standards, including industry markings and lay plans.
	6.4 Toile is created to test accuracy of pattern.
	6.5 Pattern is confirmed against design specifications.
7 Produce fashion product	7.1 Workplace is prepared according to <i>OH&S practices</i> .
	7.2 Materials and resources are prepared.
	7.3 Fabric is cut according to pattern directions.
	7.4 Product is sewn according to specifications.
	7.5 Product is finished according to specifications.
8 Evaluate and analyse design and production processes	8.1 Finished item is assessed against design specifications and design brief.
	8.2 Design is analysed and evaluated to identify opportunities for improvement.
	8.3 Production process is evaluated to identify opportunities for improvement.
	8.4 Process and improvements are documented.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Specifications may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • budget • type of garment • style requirements • fit model specifications • size range • timeline • design restrictions or conditions
Characteristics of target market may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • age • gender • size, body characteristics • economic and social expectations • purchase pattern

Relevant information may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • trends • fabrics • production and construction processes • target market • resource availability • costs
Design processes may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • application of elements and principles of design • development of inspiration boards, storyboards, etc. • assessment of fibres and fabrics • review of relevant products such as garment sample designs
Selection processes may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • checking against design brief • discussing with supervisor • testing with target market • testing with production team • discussing with patternmaker • testing with sales and marketing professionals
Communication tools may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • inspiration board • storyboard • research information • multimedia tools • print and audio tools • demonstration or exhibition
Appropriate personnel may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • supervisor • trainer/mentor • designers • patternmakers • production supervisors
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual handling techniques • standard operating procedures • personal protective equipment • safe materials handling • taking of rest breaks • ergonomic arrangement of workplaces • following marked walkways • safe storage of equipment • housekeeping • reporting accidents and incidents • other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	Demonstrates skills and knowledge to: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• integrate skills to complete design and production process• interpret and respond to a brief• experiment with a range of studio processes to develop designs• document• produce fashion product• analyse and improve processes• apply OH&S practices in work operations• maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	Consistently applies skills and knowledge when: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• organising work• completing tasks• identifying improvements• using workplace practices• using OH&S practices• recording and reporting accidents and incidents• assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes• recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions• completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	Demonstrates knowledge of: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• the elements and principles of design and how they are used to create good design in the clothing industry• information sources and requirements for design and production• garment construction• research sources• fabrics, fibres, trims and accessories, and their properties and characteristics• OH&S practices including hazard identification and control measures• quality practices• workplace practices• recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	Demonstrates skills to: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• apply principles and elements of design

- communicate design concepts
- document and transfer information
- read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material
- maintain accurate records
- communicate within the workplace
- sequence operations
- meet specifications
- clarify and check task-related information
- carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

1 – Perform tasks effectively

2 – Manage tasks

3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Design concepts are communicated for feedback and review.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Research is conducted to guide and inform the design process.	3
Plan and organise activities	Production processes are planned to meet design requirements.	3
Work with others and in teams	Information is accessed to assist design development and production.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Design specifications are used to create patterns.	2
Solve problems	Finished products are analysed to improve design concepts and production processes.	3
Use technology	Production tools and equipment are used effectively to produce desired outcome.	3

LMTFD4002A Apply principles of colour theory to fashion design development

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to identify the elements and principles of colour theory and apply it in the design process for fashion products.
Prerequisites	LMTCL2003A Identify fibres and fabrics LMTFD2005A Identify design process for fashion designs
Application	<p>The unit applies to the identification of the elements and principles of colour theory, and how they impact on the design process when developing fashion products. It includes the development of a colour wheel and a colour chart. There is a strong focus on the use of colour in the design process; both through creating visual effects and developing design directions based on colour choices.</p> <p>Work is supervised and may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Identify colour as an element of design	1.1 Dimensions of colour are identified. 1.2 Relationship of colour theory to design process is identified.
2 Identify visual effects of colour	2.1 Visual or optical effects of colour are investigated and identified. 2.2 Fashion pictures that reflect different visual effects are collected and presented in a portfolio.
3 Investigate colour combinations for use in design	3.1 Workbench and seating are set up according to OH&S practices . 3.2 Colours are mixed to create new combinations or schemes. 3.3 Templates are painted which reflect colour schemes. 3.4 Illustrations are collected which reflect different colour schemes. 3.4 Colour wheel and colour charts are used to assist colour investigations.
4 Consider use of colour in fashion design	4.1 Different colour uses are identified and compared for impact. 4.2 Use of colour in development of fashion stories is considered. 4.3 Colour forecasting options are investigated. 4.3 Colour investigations are documented for future reference.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Dimensions of colour may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• value/tone• hue• chroma/intensity/clarity
Visual or optical effects may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• size• density• value• visual mixing• simultaneous contrast• motion• texture
Colour combinations may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• complementary or contrasting• analogous or harmonious• triad• monochromatic
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• manual handling techniques• standard operating procedures• personal protective equipment• safe materials handling• taking of rest breaks• ergonomic arrangement of workplaces• following marked walkways• safe storage of equipment• housekeeping• reporting accidents and incidents• other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• identify uses of colour in fashion designs• using a given piece of fabric, colour match all components to complement, such as zip, buttons, threads, linings and other appropriate trims• document colour investigations• apply OH&S practices in work operations• maintain accurate records
------------------------------	---

Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• organising work• completing tasks• identifying improvements• using workplace practices• using OH&S practices• recording and reporting accidents and incidents• assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes• recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions• completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	<p>Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.</p>
Context for assessment	<p>Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.</p>
Interdependent assessment	<p>This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.</p>
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• sequence of operations• OH&S practices including hazard identification and control measures• quality practices• workplace practices• recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• prepare and use colour wheels and colour charts using appropriate tools and equipment• read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material• maintain accurate records• communicate within the workplace• sequence operations• meet specifications• clarify and check task-related information• carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Ideas for the use of colour in design concepts are communicated and explained.	2
Collect, analyse and organise information	Influences on design colour are researched and prioritised in terms of a design brief.	3
Plan and organise activities	Painting tools and equipment are organised for use in design development.	2
Work with others and in teams	Colour concepts are discussed with designer to verify selection.	2
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Colours are mixed to create desired hue and effect.	2
Solve problems	Colour principles are applied to meet design brief.	2
Use technology	Painting tools and equipment are used to determine and communicate colour effects.	3

LMTFD4003A Assist in preparation of preliminary design concepts

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to assist with research and preparation of initial garment design concepts.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to assisting others in the preparation of preliminary design concepts for garments where discretion and judgement may be required, for both self and others, in planning and selecting processes, procedures or outcomes.</p> <p>The unit may involve applications associated with original creation, or adaptation of designs or interpretation of sketches within contexts related to single or multiple production styles and ranges, made-to-measure and theatre costuming.</p> <p>Design may relate to individual garments where generally basic stable fabrics are used. The extent and nature of product design depends on the products and workplace structure.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Interpret design brief within specified guidelines	1.1 Design parameters are clarified, in consultation with designer, sales team, management and client. 1.2 Strategy plan and critical path plan are developed. 1.3 Constraints are identified and taken into account when clarifying brief.
2 Research relevant information within specified guidelines	2.1 Trends in fabrics, etc. are researched for performance, colour, availability, care and maintenance requirements and suitability to project or design. 2.2 Technical requirements associated with production are assessed, within specified guidelines and according to OH&S practices . 2.3 Any additional expertise required for project is identified.
3 Contribute to design concepts	3.1 Preliminary concepts are worked out in conjunction with others to identify possibilities.

- | | |
|--|---|
| | 3.2 Story themes are developed using fashion magazines, samples, swatches, trims and colour palette. |
| | 3.3 Ideas are contributed and discussed with team members to enhance success of project. |
| | 3.4 Relevant support materials and explanations are developed and refined in conjunction with members of design team. |
| 4 Contribute to presentation of the design | 4.1 Own role and relationship to others for presentation meeting is determined and rehearsed. |
| | 4.2 Presentation is assessed in a manner which promotes acceptance or approval of the design. |

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

OH&S practices OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:

- manual handling techniques
- standard operating procedures
- personal protective equipment
- safe materials handling
- taking of rest breaks
- ergonomic arrangement of workplaces
- following marked walkways
- safe storage of equipment
- housekeeping
- reporting accidents and incidents
- other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

- | | |
|------------------------------|--|
| Critical aspects of evidence | Demonstrates skills and knowledge to: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• research trends• assess technical requirements• develop story themes• communicate effectively with design team, customers, etc.• apply OH&S practices in work operations• maintain accurate records |
| Consistency in performance | Consistently applies skills and knowledge when: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• organising work• completing tasks• identifying improvements• using workplace practices |

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the elements and principles of design and how they are used to create good design in the fashion industry • the industry, global and local trends • garment construction • research sources • colour/colour mix and interpretation • fabrics, fibres, trims, accessories and their properties and characteristics • OH&S practices including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • provide effective assistance with the preparation of preliminary design concepts • produce sketches manually or using CAD systems • communicate effectively with individuals, work groups and supervisors • interpret and carry out established procedures • document and transfer information • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records • sequence operations • meet specifications • clarify and check task-related information • carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Design ideas are described to others in the design team.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Research is conducted to guide and inform the design process.	3
Plan and organise activities	Presentation of designs is planned with others in the design team.	3
Work with others and in teams	Ideas are shared and received within the design team.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Critical path plan is developed.	2
Solve problems	Brief specifications are applied to design process.	3
Use technology	Internet research is conducted to guide the design process.	3

LMTFD4004A Calculate cost estimates for fashion products

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to develop cost estimates for sample production of products within the fashion industry.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to cost estimating for products developed for the fashion industry, including sample production.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology
ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Identify <i>factors to be considered when costing</i> fashion products	<p>1.1 Factors to be taken into consideration when costing fashion products are identified according to <i>OH&S practices</i>.</p> <p>1.2 <i>Market forces</i> that affect costing for fashion industry are identified.</p>
2 Identify <i>costs</i> involved in producing fashion products	<p>2.1 Costs of fabric and trims for sample garments and production are estimated.</p> <p>2.2 Similar garments from different price points within fashion industry are compared and any production differences are identified.</p> <p>2.3 <i>Hidden costs</i> in sample production are identified.</p> <p>2.4 Differences in costs for sample and bulk production garments are explained.</p>
3 Identify and calculate labour costs involved in fashion product production	<p>3.1 <i>Labour</i> involved in fashion product production is identified.</p> <p>3.2 Labour costs for production of sample and bulk production are calculated.</p> <p>3.3 <i>Different methods of utilising labour</i> in fashion industry are identified and compared.</p>
4 Develop costing sheets to industry standards	<p>4.1 <i>Components</i> of fashion industry costing sheets are identified.</p> <p>4.2 Costing sheets are developed to meet fashion industry standards.</p> <p>4.3 Costing sheet is completed for a sample garment.</p> <p>4.4 Costing sheet is used to develop quotation for bulk production.</p> <p>4.5 Quality standards of work and received materials are assessed.</p>

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• manual handling techniques• standard operating procedures• personal protective equipment• safe materials handling• taking of rest breaks• ergonomic arrangement of workplaces• following marked walkways• safe storage of equipment• housekeeping• reporting accidents and incidents• other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise
Factors to be considered when costing may include:	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• variable costs, e.g. fabric and labour• fixed costs, e.g. overheads• profit
Market forces may include:	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• market demand for fashion labels, e.g. known versus unknown designer
Costs may include:	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• fabric• trims• labour• overheads
Hidden costs may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• sample garments not being included in costing of bulk garments
Labour may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• designers• machinists• sample machinists• cutters• marker makers• patternmakers• quality controllers• pressers• packaging• marketing and sales• transportation
Different methods of utilising labour may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• cut, make and trim (CMT)• subcontractors• offshore production

Components may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • date • style/design number • size • fabrics/linings • trims • extras, e.g. pleating, embroidery • labour/CMT • freight/shipping • packaging • overheads • labels • fabric swatch • trims • flat trade sketch
------------------------	---

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • assess and complete all required information on costing sheet • use appropriate tools and equipment • apply all quality criteria in the completion of the costing sheet • apply OH&S practices in work operations • maintain accurate records • accurately draw trade sketches of a range of garments as detailed in the design brief or specifications • accurately label sketches with appropriate notes relating to construction and design features
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.

Underpinning knowledge	Demonstrates knowledge of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • industry standards for costing specifications • patternmaking and design terminology • style features • quality standards and practices • sequence of operations • OH&S practices including hazard identification and control measures • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	Demonstrates skills to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • draw trade sketches and drawings • access industry standards • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records • communicate within the workplace • sequence operations • meet specifications • clarify and check task-related information • carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Accurate costing sheets are completed to direct garment production.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Detailed information is gathered and recorded to ensure all required information is included on costing sheet.	3
Plan and organise activities	All information is accessed and prepared for the completion of costing sheet.	3
Work with others and in teams	Colleagues and other professionals are consulted to ensure all costings are appropriate.	2
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Mathematical concepts are used in the development of costing sheets and quotations.	3
Solve problems	Design details are provided to support the production procedures within a specific enterprise.	3
Use technology	Computers and calculators are used to determine accurate costings.	3

LMTFD4005A Communicate and sell design concepts

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to use design tools such as story boards and inspiration boards to communicate and sell design concepts to other fashion industry professionals.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to the identification of the elements and principles of design, and how they impact on the process of producing fashion items. It includes impact of colour on the design process in a production environment.</p> <p>This unit applies to work in a production environment where design decisions impact on the work and where design concepts must be communicated to other fashion industry professionals with a view to gaining agreement for further development.</p> <p>Work is supervised and may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Interpret design brief	<p>1.1 Key requirements for design concept are identified according to OH&S practices.</p> <p>1.2 Impact of target market on design process is identified.</p>
2 Develop inspiration board	<p>2.1 Sources of design ideas are identified.</p> <p>2.2 Principles of design are applied to inspirational development.</p> <p>2.3 Inspirational items are collected and collated for presentation.</p> <p>2.4 Inspiration board is developed to communicate sources of inspiration.</p> <p>2.5 Inspiration board is reviewed against design brief.</p>
3 Develop story board to meet design brief	<p>3.1 Key elements of storyboard are identified.</p> <p>3.2 Garment concepts are developed based on design brief and inspiration board.</p> <p>3.3 Suitable fabrics and colour palette are selected.</p> <p>3.4 Storyboard is produced to reflect design brief.</p>
4 Present design tools	<p>4.1 Design tools are used to communicate concepts based on design brief.</p> <p>4.2 Feedback is sought on design concepts and modifications made as</p>

- required.
- 5 Sell design concepts
- 5.1 ***Interests of fashion industry professionals*** are identified and made central to promotion of ideas and concepts.
- 5.2 Benefits and features of design concepts are explained and promoted.
- 5.3 Design concepts are linked to design brief.
- 5.4 ***Presentation skills*** are used to sell design concepts.
- 5.5 Feedback and questions are invited and responded to appropriately.
- 5.6 Commitment to design concept or further development is sought and confirmed as appropriate.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

OH&S practices OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:

- manual handling techniques
- standard operating procedures
- personal protective equipment
- safe materials handling
- taking of rest breaks
- ergonomic arrangement of workplaces
- following marked walkways
- safe storage of equipment
- housekeeping
- reporting accidents and incidents
- other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

Key requirements may include

- budget
- type of garment
- style requirements
- target market

Principles of design may include

- repetition
- gradation
- rhythm
- radiation
- harmony
- contrast
- dominance
- proportion
- balance
- unity

Key elements may include

- fabrics
- colours

Interests may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • sketches • shapes • textures • appealing to target market • price range • market position • construction strategies • promotion opportunities • themes • corporate goals • timing • international fashion influences • use in mass media
Fashion industry professionals may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • senior designers and patternmakers • clients • management • buyers • media
Presentation skills may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • effective verbal and non-verbal communication • active listening • use of appropriate communication tools • positive language • clear statement of main points • interpersonal communication skills

Formatted: French (France)

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • complete inspiration and storyboards • apply design principles • communicate design concepts • interpret and respond to a design brief • sell features and benefits of design concepts • use presentation skills • apply all quality criteria • convey all necessary information • apply OH&S practices in work operations • maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• recording and reporting accidents and incidents• assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes• recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions• completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	Demonstrates knowledge of: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• principles and elements of design• fibres and fabrics• sequence of operations• goals and aspirations of clients or target groups• role of design features and benefits• OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures• quality practices• workplace practices• recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	Demonstrates skills to: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• draw designs• make presentations• source information• read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material• maintain accurate records• communicate within the workplace• sequence operations• meet specifications• clarify and check task-related information• carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Inspirations and design concepts are conveyed through use of collage and visual display tools.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Sources of information and inspiration are collected and organised on visual display tools.	3
Plan and organise activities	Storyboard design is planned before commencement.	2
Work with others and in teams	Ideas are communicated to others in the team and their feedback is sought.	2
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Technical drawing skills are used to convey designs.	2
Solve problems	Communication tools are used to relate design concepts to client needs.	3
Use technology	Computer generated images are used to support visual presentation.	2

LMTFD4006A Interact and network with fashion industry participants

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to communicate and network with others working along the fashion industry supply chain, to ensure design processes and outcomes meet requirements.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to implementing communication techniques and maintaining effective industry networks that are appropriate to the fashion design industry.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Describe features of fashion industry communication	<p>1.1 Roles of different <i>fashion industry participants</i> are described.</p> <p>1.2 Routine industry <i>communication channels and tools</i> and their appropriate uses are described.</p> <p>1.3 <i>Information needs</i> of fashion industry participants for design, procurement, production and marketing processes are described.</p> <p>1.4 Communication <i>protocols</i> of different industry participants are identified.</p> <p>1.5 Workplace communication practices and <i>quality standards</i> are identified.</p>
2 Communicate design concepts and production requirements	<p>2.1 Objectives and processes for communicating design concepts are identified and used effectively.</p> <p>2.2 Appropriate industry communication tools used to communicate and determine design production, are selected and applied.</p> <p>2.3 Language and terminology that is appropriate to fashion industry is used routinely when interacting and <i>communicating</i> with industry participants to ensure required meaning is accurately conveyed.</p> <p>2.4 An understanding of roles of different industry participants is applied to planning and implementing industry communication.</p> <p>2.5 Information requirements of fashion industry participants are accommodated in development and production of fashion designs.</p>

- 2.6 Feedback is sought on effectiveness of communication in relaying design and production concepts and requirements, and is incorporated into future communication.
- 2.7 Where difficulties arise in communication, assistance is sought from ***appropriate personnel***.
- 2.8 Outcomes of communication and information received are documented and records are maintained.
- 3 Develop and maintain effective industry networks
 - 3.1 An understanding of scope and role of different industry participants is applied to develop ***networks*** that cover relevant areas of operation.
 - 3.2 Cooperative working relationships with other relevant participants are developed and maintained.
 - 3.3 Information about key industry participants is gathered and stored so it is up to date and accessible.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Fashion industry participants may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">designers, patternmakers, suppliers, merchandising and marketing professionals, media, importers, exporters, production personnel
Communication channels and tools may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">sketches, drawings, illustrations, photographssamples of fabrics and specificationswritten descriptions and rationalemultimedia forms such as DVDcharts, diagrams and specification sheetsstoryboards, inspiration boardsmeetingselectronic communication toolsdisplays, demonstrations, eventsmass media channels
Information needs may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">details for production or marketing purposessize, style, features, colours, etc.timing, costs, distribution, availabilitylayout, contentgoals, strategiesroles and expectationspriorities, limitations
Protocols may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">specific formats, timing and content of communication required by different industry participants
Quality standards may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">accepted formats for presenting ideas and conceptsstandards of presentation for drafts and final versionslayout and content
Communicating may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">face to face, by telephone, in writing, by email

Appropriate personnel may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • supervisor, work colleagues • colleagues with specific and relevant expertise
Networks include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • industry bodies and professional associations • design studios • industry professionals providing specific services • production companies • professional development networks
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual handling techniques • standard operating procedures • personal protective equipment • safe materials handling • taking of rest breaks • ergonomic arrangement of workplaces • following marked walkways • safe storage of equipment • housekeeping • reporting accidents and incidents • other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • interact with fashion industry participants to achieve agreed outcomes • communicate concepts such as ideas and design concepts to fashion professionals with a range of information needs • meet workplace standards, including quality standards • apply an understanding of the roles and information needs of different industry participants • communicate with industry participants in a timely and effective manner using industry accepted protocols
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment

Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• workplace communication practices and quality standards• accepted ways of communicating ideas on the fashion industry, including sketches, diagrams, illustrations, photographs, etc.• ways of presenting fashion concepts, including written descriptions and rationale, samples of fabrics and production specifications, charts, diagrams and data sheets• multimedia forms for presenting concepts, including video, slides• roles of different industry participants• ways to effectively manage information about relevant industry professionals, including use of IT to maintain industry contact lists• uses of a variety of communication tools• OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures• quality practices• workplace practices• recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• use appropriate industry terminology and language to convey meaning• maintain a network of relevant industry participants• work effectively with others both within and outside of the workplace• conduct quality checks on own work• identify communication goals• use communication tools such as computers, internet, email, databases• read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material• maintain accurate records• communicate within the workplace• sequence operations• meet specifications• clarify and check task-related information• carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Communication is undertaken with industry participants.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Information about key industry participants is gathered and stored.	3
Plan and organise activities	Industry communication is planned to meet desired outcomes.	3
Work with others and in teams	All work complies with workplace and quality standards.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques		
Solve problems	Information needs of respondent are addressed and additional support sought if necessary.	3
Use technology	Electronic databases are used to record industry contact lists.	3

LMTFD4007A Conduct quality assurance for patterns and garments

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to apply quality assurance standards to work operations in the patternmaking industry.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to quality assurance standards that are required in the patternmaking industry to ensure that the garment produced from the pattern meets all requirements of the design specifications.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology
ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Describe quality process	<p>1.1 Specification document is analysed, checked for accuracy and completeness.</p> <p>1.2 Input and output requirements are identified and described.</p> <p>1.3 Garment measurement table is identified.</p> <p>1.4 Quality process for development of patterns is described.</p> <p>1.5 Integrity and validity of base pattern is checked to ensure seams match, darts are proved, etc.</p> <p>1.6 Block and pattern appropriateness is determined and evaluated for design.</p> <p>1.7 Construction and finishing methods are described.</p> <p>1.8 Australian Standards are identified and described for patterns and garment construction.</p>
2 Measure garment	<p>2.1 Tools and equipment are obtained and set up in readiness for use according to OH&S practices.</p> <p>2.2 Garment is obtained and laid out for measuring.</p> <p>2.3 Garment measurements are taken accurately and compared to specifications within garment measurement table.</p> <p>2.4 Any problems with garment are identified and recorded.</p> <p>2.5 Problems are reported to designer, patternmaker and sample machinist.</p>

3 Verify garment sizing	3.1 Different sizes are identified and explained. 3.2 Body measurements are compared to garment sizing. 3.3 Grading increments across different styles are identified. 3.4 Body measurements of base size are verified. 3.5 Where required, size chart is developed.
4 Identify quality deviations	4.1 Fabric performance and testing information is obtained and verified against label information. 4.2 Faults or production problems for garment construction or patterns are identified. 4.3 Suitable preventative or corrective action is recommended based on quality standards.
5 Despatch work	5.1 Garment or article is checked against specifications. 5.2 Tickets, labels and swing tags are attached as required according to Australian Standards. 5.3 Boxing, packing, bagging, folding and hanging are performed according to environmental legislation. 5.4 Completed garments or articles are despatched. 5.5 Quality assurance, production and other records are completed.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Construction and finishing methods may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • seam finishes such as flat seam, blind hem, French seam • allocation of seam allowance • stitches such as straight, zigzag, overlock, buttonholes • stitch requirements • pressing such as steam, heat, iron
Tools and equipment may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • tape measure • pen/pencil • measurement or size chart or table • eraser • Australian Standard Chart

OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual handling techniques • standard operating procedures • personal protective equipment • safe materials handling • taking of rest breaks • ergonomic arrangement of workplaces • following marked walkways • safe storage of equipment
----------------	---

- housekeeping
- reporting accidents and incidents
- other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

Garment measurements	Garment measurements include circumference and linear measurements that may include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • measuring across the top of the shoulder of the garment • sleeve • underarm to side seam • neck circumference • waist circumference
Garment measurement table is	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the measurements of the garment not the body measurements such as hem width, sleeve length, etc. and is derived from the pattern
Grading increments may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • growth in measurement at nominated points on pattern
Faults may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • material faults such as weak spots, pilling, bleeding • construction process faults such as broken thread, inappropriate seams, seam finishing, seam puckering, needle damage • labelling and specifications faults such as incorrect care label and instructions, incorrect size

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	Demonstrates skills and knowledge to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • interpret relevant work instructions, standards and specifications • measure and check the relevant quality parameters • interpret the results of quality checks in terms of specifications, patterns and work standards • take action as required where quality assurance has not been met • maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	Consistently applies skills and knowledge when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.

Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	Demonstrates knowledge of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	Demonstrates skills to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • consistently achieve quality and production output requirements • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records • communicate within the workplace • sequence operations • meet specifications • clarify and check task-related information • carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Report problems in pattern and or garment to the designer, patternmaker and sample machinist.	2
Collect, analyse and organise information	Record garment measurements and compare with garment measurement table.	2
Plan and organise activities	Quality assurance plans are developed to meet production requirements.	2
Work with others and in teams	Work with designer, patternmaker and sample machinist to achieve quality outcomes for patterns and garments.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Accurately take and record measurements of garment.	2
Solve problems	Rectify faults in pattern or garment construction.	3
Use technology	Appropriate machines and equipment are used.	2

LMTFD4008A Construct stock size block for garment to meet size and fit specifications

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to construct stock size blocks according to size and fit specifications.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to the construction of blocks for use in garment production to meet size and fit specifications. Blocks are used as the basis for patternmaking to develop new styles.</p> <p>Work conducted requires some discretion and judgment.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Interpret size and fit	<p>1.1 Size and fit specifications and Australian Standards are interpreted and clarified with designer or relevant personnel.</p> <p>1.2 Base size to be constructed is identified.</p> <p>1.3 Base size and fit model are checked for compatibility.</p> <p>1.4 Size is evaluated and recorded in relation to specification of fit model, body movement and comfort.</p>
2 Construct block	<p>2.1 Appropriate drafting principles and methods are selected for block construction.</p> <p>2.2 <i>Measurements of fit model</i> are analysed and input into block drafting formulas and methodology.</p> <p>2.3 <i>Ease allowance</i> is determined.</p> <p>2.4 Block is constructed using <i>patternmaking technical skills</i> and <i>OH&S practices</i> and checked to ensure compliance with requirements.</p> <p>2.5 <i>Methods and formulas</i> used are documented.</p>

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 3 Construct and assess toiles | 3.1 Toiles are accurately cut and constructed from block.
3.2 Correct proportion, fit and balance is confirmed by fitting and necessary minor adjustments are made.
3.3 Accuracy of toiles is evaluated in relation to fit, comfort and appropriate to base size specifications. |
| 4 Develop and complete final block | 4.1 Information from toiles, including any minor adjustments is transferred to blocks.
4.2 Final blocks are completed, labelled and checked for accuracy and completeness of all necessary information, and to ensure compliance with specifications. |
| 5 Maintain records | 5.1 Blocks are <i>filed</i> and stored.
5.2 All required documentation is completed. |

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

- | | |
|--|--|
| Measurement of fit model must include | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • accurate assessment of body measurement positions (reference points such as bust, waist, hip levels) • accurate taking of body measurements, including girth, vertical and horizontal measurements • reference to Australian standard measurements • age • sex • assessment of physical characteristics, including body characteristics and unique features as aligned with standard representation |
| Fit model may be | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • male • female • child |
| Ease allowance may be | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • relating to fit and comfort • relating to style requirements |
| Patternmaking technical skills may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • motor and drawing skills • calculation and accuracy abilities • interpretation and presentation skills |
| Methods and formulas may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • deviations from standard patterns • sources of pattern components • pattern derivation methods and formulas • block construction methods and formulas • application of current industry practice |
| OH&S practices | <p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual handling techniques • standard operating procedures • personal protective equipment |

- safe materials handling
- taking of rest breaks
- ergonomic arrangement of workplaces
- following marked walkways
- safe storage of equipment
- housekeeping
- reporting accidents and incidents
- other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

Filed may include

- filing by date, category, label, location, gender and age

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • interpret size • measure fit model • construct and check blocks • develop and adjust toiles • communicate effectively with design team, customers, etc. • apply OH&S practices in work operations • maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	<p>Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.</p>
Context for assessment	<p>Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.</p>
Interdependent assessment	<p>This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.</p>
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • size standards • industry, global and local trends • detailed knowledge of garment construction • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices

Underpinning skills	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> workplace practices recording and reporting practices
	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> construct garment toiles or prototypes develop the final blocks and recommend alternative construction methods use manual or CAD systems compile information communicate effectively with individuals, work groups and supervisors select, interpret and apply procedures, processes and motor skills prepare and present reports and information in appropriate formats consistently achieve quality and production output requirements read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material maintain accurate records sequence operations meet specifications clarify and check task-related information carry out work according to OH&S practices

Formatted: English (Australia)

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Base size required is discussed with designer to determine size to be used.	2
Collect, analyse and organise information	Fit model measurements are interpreted and body characteristics analysed.	3
Plan and organise activities	Work bench is set up and prepared for block construction.	2
Work with others and in teams	Designer and quality assurance officer are assisted in preparing the specification document.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Formulas for block construction are derived from a set of measurements.	3
Solve problems	Blocks are tested for accuracy and adjustments made as required.	3
Use technology	Appropriate machines or equipment are used for block construction.	2

LMTFD4009A Create and edit digital embroidery designs

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to create and edit digital embroidery designs using specialised software programs.
Prerequisites	LMTCL2003A Identify fibres and fabrics LMTCL3008A Set and produce digital embroidery
Application	<p>This unit applies to the creation of original designs and editing of designs for production of digital embroidery effects on a wide range of garments and fabrics.</p> <p>This unit requires the use of computers. If training in the use of computers is required then the unit: LMTGN2009A Operate computing technology in a TCF workplace should also be selected.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Identify client design brief	<p>1.1 <i>Specifications</i> for embroidery design are determined.</p> <p>1.2 Available software programs are identified.</p> <p>1.3 <i>Garment considerations</i> are identified.</p> <p>1.4 <i>Machine requirements</i> are identified.</p>
2 Create original design	<p>2.1 Design concept is created and prepared for presentation.</p> <p>2.2 Designs are reviewed against brief and with client, and modified as required to gain approval for development.</p> <p>2.3 Design concept is developed using appropriate <i>tools and equipment</i> and according to <i>OH&S practices</i>.</p> <p>2.4 Design specifications are developed to guide production.</p> <p>2.5 Designs are stored, organised and protected.</p>
3 Edit design	<p>3.1 Suitable designs or images are selected for editing.</p> <p>3.2 Designs are imported into software programs.</p> <p>3.3 Designs are edited to achieve design objectives.</p> <p>3.4 Production specifications are determined.</p> <p>3.5 Designs are stored, organised and protected.</p>

- 4 Present design for feedback
- 4.1 Design concept is presented for feedback.
 - 4.2 Feedback is received and considered in line with design objectives.
 - 4.3 Design concept is modified and improved where possible.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Specifications may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• content• colour• dimensions• stitch type and size• font• fill
Garment considerations may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• type of fabric• colour of fabric• positioning of design• suitability of size, design, colour
Machine requirements may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• thread type• needle type• stitch settings• spool requirements
Tools and equipment may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• computer• software programs• hardware peripherals such as scanners, printers• paper, pens• templates
Edited may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• manipulation of height, scale, skew, rotation, width, length, fonts, fill, baseline, envelopes, borders, spacing, needle penetration, stitch size and type, colour• changes to content, style, finish
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• manual handling techniques• standard operating procedures• personal protective equipment• safe materials handling• taking of rest breaks• ergonomic arrangement of workplaces• following marked walkways• safe storage of equipment• housekeeping• reporting accidents and incidents• other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • plan work tasks to achieve specifications • prepare workstation and work before commencing operations • use software programs to develop designs • apply OH&S practices in work operations • maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • digital embroidery program features • editing tools and procedures • operating procedures for digitiser machines • characteristics of typical fabrics, threads and other materials • quality standards and practices • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • receive and interpret design brief • use required computer and program functions • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records • communicate within the workplace • sequence operations • meet specifications

- clarify and check task-related information
- carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Design concepts are communicated to clients.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Design brief and specifications are interpreted and assessed against software capabilities.	3
Plan and organise activities	Software program is set up to create designs.	3
Work with others and in teams	Information is exchanged with client, production staff and design team to assess viability of designs.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Calculations are conducted to determine design proportions and production specifications.	3
Solve problems	Design features are translated into specifications for production.	3
Use technology	Software programs are used to create detailed designs.	3

LMTFD4010A Create pattern to meet design specifications applying advanced patternmaking principles

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to create patterns using an existing block, and applying advanced patternmaking principles.
Prerequisites	LMTCL3009A Develop patterns from a block using basic patternmaking principles
Application	<p>The unit applies to the development of a pattern from an existing block, using advanced patternmaking principles, including contouring, square blocking and pivoting.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology
ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Prepare workstation	<p>1.1 Workstation and seating are set up according to OH&S practices and specifications for work.</p> <p>1.2 Patternmaking tools and equipment are selected and prepared.</p> <p>1.3 Any additional materials and equipment required to perform task are collected.</p> <p>1.4 Patternmaking tools, equipment and supplies are laid out for efficient and safe operation.</p>
2 Interpret the design	<p>2.1 Design drawings and specifications are interpreted and clarified.</p> <p>2.2 Design lines and style features are identified.</p> <p>2.3 Fabric characteristics and performance, and trims and finishings are considered in relation to design.</p> <p>2.4 Any special construction methods or trim details of garment are considered in relation to design.</p> <p>2.5 Ease allowance is determined.</p> <p>2.6 Details of base size are obtained.</p>
3 Select block	<p>3.1 Pattern production is planned.</p> <p>3.2 Appropriate block is determined for development of pattern.</p> <p>3.3 Appropriate block is selected and retrieved from storage system.</p>

4 Create pattern	<p>4.1 Advanced patternmaking principles are applied in developing pattern.</p> <p>4.2 Methods and formulas used are documented.</p> <p>4.3 Pattern is produced from existing block to specified design.</p> <p>4.4 Pattern pieces are checked for accuracy of seam allowances, ease allowance, seam match, hems and functional openings.</p> <p>4.5 Pattern pieces are labelled and markings completed.</p>
5 Test and finalise pattern	<p>5.1 Toile or garment segments are tested as appropriate.</p> <p>5.2 Toile or garment segments are examined and assessed against design specifications.</p> <p>5.3 Any pattern alterations are completed and assessed to meet specifications.</p> <p>5.4 Pattern is finalised and checked to ensure accuracy, completeness and compliance to design specifications.</p>
6 Prepare pattern documentation for production	<p>6.1 Sizing system for pattern and base size are identified.</p> <p>6.2 Spreadsheet of full range for selected sizing system is prepared with essential measurements.</p> <p>6.3 Grade table for full size range is prepared.</p> <p>6.4 Pattern specification sheets with trade drawings are completed and attached to patterns for storage.</p> <p>6.5 Work order for sizing labels is prepared as required.</p> <p>6.6 Finished patterns are filed.</p>

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual handling techniques • standard operating procedures • personal protective equipment • safe materials handling • taking of rest breaks • ergonomic arrangement of workplaces • following marked walkways • safe storage of equipment • housekeeping • reporting accidents and incidents • other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise
----------------	---

Patternmaking tools and equipment may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • blocks • scissors • square rule • marker pens • hole punch
---	--

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • pins • fashion triangle • French curve • pattern notcher • weights • tape measure
Style features may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • garment type, collar, sleeves, yoke, sides, openings, neckline, buttons, seams, zips, gathers, pleats, panels, tucks
Advanced patternmaking principles include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • pivoting • square blocking • contouring
Pattern markings include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • appropriate seam allowance • notching • pattern information (size, style number, cutting instructions and identity) • darts • drill holes • grain line • stitching line
Methods and formulas may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • deviations from standard patterns • sources of pattern components • pattern derivation methods and formulas • block construction methods and formulas • application of current industry practice

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • identify and define design lines and features • choose existing block to suit work specifications • create, check and test patterns • make toile • communicate effectively with design team, customers, etc. • apply OH&S practices • maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • principles and concepts of patternmaking • customer and workplace fit requirements • cost efficiency in relation to patternmaking • range of typical garment fabrics, including weight and other characteristics • marker making procedures • cutting and garment construction • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • consistently achieve quality and production output requirements • undertake a range of activities associated with creating patterns • develop patterns with consideration to the characteristics of fabric and trimmings • test pattern • use manual or CAD systems • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records • communicate within the workplace • sequence operations • meet specifications • clarify and check task-related information • carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
-----------------------	----------------	--------------

Communicate ideas and information	Specifications and pattern are completed according to workplace procedures.	2
Collect, analyse and organise information	Specifications are obtained and interpreted to guide development of pattern.	3
Plan and organise activities	Toile is made to test pattern with any necessary adjustments made to meet design requirements.	2
Work with others and in teams	Designs are clarified with designer as required.	2
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Measurements are recorded accurately with ease and seam allowance included.	2
Solve problems	Patterns are tested for fit with adjustments made where required.	2
Use technology	Machines and equipment are used to produce patterns and toiles.	2

LMTFD4011A Cut fabrics for prototype designs

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to lay up, make marker and cut work for sample designs where only a couple of garments would be cut out at a time, as required by the designer to test design or pattern.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to situations where single garments or only a couple of layers of fabric may be cut. The marker may be developed directly on the fabric lay or planned separately and applied. Cutting tools and equipment would include dress maker's shears, electric cutting tools and rotary cutters.</p> <p>Work involves some discretion, initiative and judgement.</p> <p>Completion of sewing units LMTCL2007A Lay up, mark and cut uncomplicated fabrics and lays and LMTCL3005A Lay up and cut complicated fabrics and lays would result in a higher level ability and could therefore be used as evidence of competency against this unit.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Prepare workstation	<p>1.1 Workstation, cutting table and seating are set up according to OH&S practices and specifications for work.</p> <p>1.2 Cutting equipment is cleaned, checked and servicing assessed according to manufacturer instructions.</p> <p>1.3 Cutting table is prepared to suit correct lay length.</p> <p>1.4 Lay-up and marking equipment is set up and prepared for use.</p>
2 Lay up fabric	<p>2.1 Laying-up instructions are interpreted.</p> <p>2.2 Fabric is collected and checked.</p> <p>2.3 Fabric width and quality are checked with laying-up instructions.</p> <p>2.2 Fabric is laid up and fabric tension adjusted to match fabric performance.</p> <p>2.5 Fabric is checked for faults and required action taken.</p>
3 Draft lay marker	<p>2.2 Cutting order is interpreted for marking requirements such as fabric type, width, quantity and garment sizes.</p>

	7.2 Required pattern pieces are collected and checked manually or by computer.
	7.2 Pattern pieces are manipulated and positioned manually on paper or by computer for most efficient fabric use.
	7.2 Lay marker is drawn up manually or by computer.
	3.5 Laying-up instructions are prepared according to order requirements.
4 Copy marker	7.2 Marker is checked against order requirements.
	4.2 Marker is copied either manually or by computer.
5 Position marker	7.2 Marker is placed on the lay.
	5.2 Marker and lay alignment are checked and adjustments made as required.
6 Cut work	7.2 Lay is cut using cutting equipment according to requirements for operation.
	7.2 Cut work is inspected, any faults identified and appropriate action taken to ensure cut pieces meet quality standards.
	7.2 Preventative action is taken to avoid any recurrence of defective pieces and is recorded.
	6.4 Performance of cutting equipment is regularly checked for signs of faulty operation, including evidence from inspection of cut pieces, and any required action is taken.
7 Complete work	7.2 Cut work is directed to next operation and work area is cleaned and prepared for next job.
	7.2 Master copy of lay marker is stored in filing drawer or computer.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual handling techniques • standard operating procedures • personal protective equipment • safe materials handling • taking of rest breaks • ergonomic arrangement of workplaces • following marked walkways • safe storage of equipment • housekeeping • reporting accidents and incidents • other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise
Cutting equipment may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • dressmaker's shears • electric rotary and upright cutters • cutting mats

Lay-up and marking equipment may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • computers and required software • patterns • fabric • marker card or paper • weights • clamps
Fabric may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • woven fabrics • knitted fabrics • fabrics with a variety of finishes
Required action may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • cutting out faults using splicing (overlap joining) • other appropriate repair techniques

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • check work against work specification or cutting order, and workplace practices • set up manual or computer drafting equipment before commencement of marker making operations • make markers involving patterns, fabrics and lays using manual or computer techniques • prepare cutting table and work before commencing cutting operations • use cutting techniques • use lay-up techniques • apply OH&S practices in work operations • maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	<p>Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.</p>
Context for assessment	<p>Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.</p>
Interdependent assessment	<p>This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.</p>
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • characteristics of fabrics and other materials used in garment assembly

- fabric faults
- pattern identification
- computer operations involved in marker making, copying and storage
- quality standards and fabric/garment handling procedures
- OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures
- workplace practices
- recording and reporting practices

Underpinning skills

Demonstrates skills to:

- draft markers using either manual or computer techniques
- handle, receive and assemble garments
- read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material
- maintain accurate records
- communicate within the workplace
- sequence operations
- meet specifications
- clarify and check task-related information
- carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

1 – Perform tasks effectively

2 – Manage tasks

3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Marker is made to guide cutting.	2
Collect, analyse and organise information	Patterns are organised for making marker.	1
Plan and organise activities	Work area is set up with required equipment.	2
Work with others and in teams	Work is conducted in cooperation with others.	1
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Patterns are laid out to minimise waste.	2
Solve problems	Fabric faults are identified.	1
Use technology	Computer is used to make markers.	2

LMTFD4012A Develop product specifications for fashion design

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to complete detailed specifications for fashion designs to guide production.
Prerequisites	LMTFD3004A Draw a trade drawing for fashion design
Application	<p>The unit applies to patternmaking or design, where accurate specifications are required to communicate, interpret and clarify a garment design to ensure production achieves design brief. Specification documentation may include standard forms, trade drawings and use of industry standards, according to workplace practices and procedures.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Identify <i>types of specification sheet</i>	<p>Key features of different types of specification sheet are described.</p> <p>Types of drawing techniques used on specification sheets are identified.</p>
2 Identify specification standards used by industry	<p>2.1 Acceptable deviations from set standards for sizing and quality are identified.</p> <p>2.2 Common faults and discrepancies and their causes are identified.</p> <p>2.3 Industry standards in relation to sizing are identified.</p> <p>2.4 Impact of industry sizing deviations on specifications is identified.</p>
3 Prepare specification sheet for fashion product	<p>3.1 Design instructions are analysed and interpreted.</p> <p>3.2 Drawing/sketch is produced on specification sheet.</p> <p>3.3 Specification sheet is completed with relevant information.</p> <p>3.4 Set deviations are recorded on specification sheet.</p>
4 Test specifications	<p>4.1 Finished product is compared against specifications.</p> <p>4.2 Deviations are identified and recorded.</p> <p>4.3 Deviations are addressed or repaired.</p>

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Types of specification sheet may include:	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• make• cut• size• design• pattern
Key features may include:	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• pattern identification• pictures• production instructions• cutting instructions• trim and finishing requirements
Relevant information may include:	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• style number• fabric types and quantity• fabric quality standards• suppliers• cutting and making instructions• designer name• special effects• production details• garment quality criteria• trade sketch• rear, side, front views• printing and artwork requirements• finishing details• client testing requirements• any special packaging requirements
Set deviations may include:	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• seam allowance• size
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• manual handling techniques• standard operating procedures• personal protective equipment• safe materials handling• taking of rest breaks• ergonomic arrangement of workplaces• following marked walkways• safe storage of equipment

- housekeeping
- reporting accidents and incidents
- other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • assess and complete all required information on specification sheet • use appropriate tools and equipment • apply all quality criteria in the completion of the specification sheet • apply OH&S practices in work operations • maintain accurate records • accurately draw trade sketches of a range of garments as detailed in the design brief or specifications • accurately label sketches with appropriate notes relating to construction and design features
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • details required for comprehensive specification descriptions • industry standards for specifications • construction and pattern-making techniques • patternmaking and design terminology • style features • fabric performance characteristics • quality standards • sequence of operations • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices

Underpinning skills	Demonstrates skills to: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• draw trade sketches and drawings• access industry standards• complete accurate documentation• read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material• maintain accurate records• communicate within the workplace• sequence operations• meet specifications• clarify and check task-related information• carry out work according to OH&S practices
---------------------	--

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Specification sheets are completed to direct garment production.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Detailed information is gathered and recorded to ensure all required information is included on specification sheet.	3
Plan and organise activities	Information is accessed and prepared for the completion of specification sheet.	3
Work with others and in teams	Colleagues and other professionals are consulted to refine design details.	2
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Proportion and accurate measurements are used to develop the trade sketch.	2
Solve problems	Design details are provided to support production procedures.	3
Use technology	Computers are used to scan in sketch and render design.	2

LMTFD4013A Grade 2D patterns

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to grade flat or 2D patterns used for garment production.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to the grading of flat or 2D patterns used for garment production where discretion and judgement may be required, for both self and others, in planning and selecting processes, procedures or outcomes.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Analyse grading system	<p>1.1 Workstation and/or equipment are selected and prepared according to OH&S practices.</p> <p>1.2 Grading system used in workplace is identified.</p> <p>1.3 Measurements of base size and subsequent spread are identified.</p> <p>1.4 Number of sizes in grading is calculated.</p> <p>1.5 Grade increments between sizes are established.</p>
2 Set up base pattern	<p>2.1 Base pattern of a basic style and pattern pieces are identified, constant or '0' position is established and grade points with corresponding values are assigned.</p> <p>2.2 Base size pattern is checked for correct information, balance points and pattern fit and clarification sought, as required.</p> <p>2.3 Style and fabric characteristics which influence grading are identified and any queries are clarified with patternmaker.</p> <p>2.4 Appropriate grade plan is selected and grade rule table constructed.</p>
3 Grade pattern	<p>3.1 Stacking or outlay requirements, including direction are determined.</p> <p>3.2 Pattern is graded manually using patternmaking technical skills or by computer.</p> <p>3.3 If stacking, stack points or lines are identified.</p> <p>3.4 Integrity of pattern attributes is preserved during grading.</p> <p>3.5 All pattern pieces are accurately labelled with pattern marking symbols.</p> <p>3.6 Pattern is checked for accuracy and rectified or addressed as required.</p>

- 4 Maintain records 4.1 Records are maintained and documentation completed as required.
 4.2 Patterns are filed.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

OH&S practices OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:

- manual handling techniques
- standard operating procedures
- personal protective equipment
- safe materials handling
- taking of rest breaks
- ergonomic arrangement of workplaces
- following marked walkways
- safe storage of equipment
- housekeeping
- reporting accidents and incidents
- other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

Grading system may include • flat, 2D patterns
 • shaped, 3D patterns
 • position of constant or stack point

Basic styles may include • A-line skirt
 • straight skirt
 • T-shirt
 • shirt
 • pants
 • shorts (elastic waisted)
 • blouses
 • lingerie

Pattern attributes may include • darts
 • notches
 • shape
 • design proportion

Pattern marking symbols may include • grain lines
 • darts
 • slits
 • job seams
 • seam allowance
 • written information and instructions

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • check patterns for correct information • grade flat, 2D patterns • ensure graded patterns meet specifications • communicate effectively with design team, customers, etc. • apply OH&S practices in work operations • maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Australian size standards • workplace and customer size charts • patternmaking and the development of a pattern • cost efficiency in patternmaking • an understanding of marker making • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • produce precise results • use CAD or manual grading systems • communicate effectively with individuals, work groups and supervisors • document and transfer information

- consistently achieve quality and production output requirements
- read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material
- maintain accurate records
- sequence operations
- meet specifications
- clarify and check task-related information
- carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Designer is communicated with regarding grading requirements for production of garment	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Base pattern information is obtained and analysed against design specifications	3
Plan and organise activities	Sequence for grading of sizes is determined	3
Work with others and in teams	Information is clarified with designer	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	2D grading increments are accurately determined	3
Solve problems	Inaccurate patterns and or grading are rectified	3
Use technology	Appropriate machines and equipment are used	3

LMTFD4014A Identify influences on contemporary fashion designs and construction techniques

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to identify influences on fashion design and construction techniques of the 20th century.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to the analysis of the most important economic, social, political and technological factors in the 20th century that have had an impact on fashion development and demand. The role of designers as change agents throughout this period is also covered and related to fashion design today. Investigation into the 20th century, including historical influences and trends will direct the process. Skills covered in this unit will be applied to the design and identification of construction techniques for fashion designs.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Identify the <i>function of clothing</i>	1.1 Purposes of clothing are identified. 1.2 <i>Characteristics</i> represented in clothing are identified. 1.3 <i>Factors</i> which influence the way people dress are identified. 1.4 Function of clothing is related to fashion design.
2 Identify 20th century influences on role of designers	2.1 Significantly influential fashion designers of 20th century throughout the world are identified. 2.2 Role of fashion designers through 20th century is described and compared to current expectations.
3 Identify influences on fashion design from 20th century	3.1 <i>Fashion trends</i> from 20th century are identified. 3.2 <i>Significant events</i> of 20th century are identified and related to fashion changes. 3.3 A <i>decade</i> from 20th century is investigated to identify influences on fashion development and demand.

- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| 4 | Identify construction techniques used through 20th century | 4.1 Design features of 20th century garments are identified.
4.2 Desired effects of design features are described.
4.3 Construction techniques to create design features are described.
4.4 Use of construction techniques in contemporary designs is identified. |
| 5 | Analyse fashion influences on current practice | 5.1 Design influences on current styling are analysed.
5.2 Design influences on current trends are analysed.
5.3 Use of construction techniques in current styles is analysed.
5.4 Influences of new and emerging practices are analysed. |

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Function of clothing could include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• social• psychological• cultural• economic• environmental
Characteristics may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• gender, age group, nationality, religious affiliation, career social, economic and marital status, personal achievements, loyalties, beliefs or family connections.
Factors could include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• political events, music, fads, myths, economics ups and downs, sexual mores, social movements, climate, health and safety, changes in work/leisure time• image, self esteem, happiness, stimulation, incentive, expression of fantasies
Life and career factors could include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• his/her background and early influences• career development• analysis of designs• innovations• effect of 20th century fashion
Fashion trends may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• skirt hem lengths• sleeve shapes• trousers widths• lycra• hipsters
Significant events may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• wars• rock and roll• hippy era• technological developments, e.g. plastics
A decade could include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• 1940s – WWII, rationing of fabrics, military look, changing role of women, hidden glamour for rich, Dior look as a reaction to war restrictions

OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual handling techniques • standard operating procedures • personal protective equipment • safe materials handling • taking of rest breaks • ergonomic arrangement of workplaces • following marked walkways • safe storage of equipment • housekeeping • reporting accidents and incidents • other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise
----------------	---

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • investigate and present information on influential fashion designers of the 20th century • investigate and present information on major events and influences on the fashion industry of the 20th century • convey all necessary information in appropriate manner • apply OH&S practices in work operations • maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	<p>Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.</p>
Context for assessment	<p>Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.</p>
Interdependent assessment	<p>This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.</p>
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • style features • sequence of operations

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • research • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records • communicate within the workplace • sequence operations • meet specifications • clarify and check task-related information • carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Influences on fashion design and their effects are described.	2
Collect, analyse and organise information	Construction techniques used at different times in the 20th century are researched and key elements identified.	2
Plan and organise activities	Information resources are identified and prioritised for usefulness.	2
Work with others and in teams		
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Data on construction techniques is identified and compared to note differences over time.	2
Solve problems		2
Use technology	Computers are used to research historical information.	2

LMTFD4015A Create pattern from block to meet customer specifications

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to create a pattern from a block to meet design and fit specifications of the customer
Prerequisites	LMTFD4010A Create pattern to meet design specifications applying advanced patternmaking principles
Application	<p>The unit applies to the development of a pattern from an existing block for an individual size and to meet the styling requirements of the customer.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design
ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Prepare workstation	<p>1.1 Workstation and seating are set up according to <i>OH&S practices</i> and specifications for work.</p> <p>1.2 <i>Patternmaking tools and equipment</i> are selected and prepared.</p> <p>1.3 Any additional materials and equipment required to perform task are collected.</p> <p>1.4 Patternmaking tools, equipment and supplies are laid out according to OH&S practices for efficient and safe operation.</p>
2 Interpret the design	<p>2.1 Design drawings and specifications are interpreted and clarified.</p> <p>2.2 Design lines and <i>style features</i> are identified.</p> <p>2.3 Fabric characteristics and performance, and trims and finishings are considered in relation to the design and customer requirements.</p> <p>2.4 Ease allowance is determined.</p> <p>2.5 Any special construction methods or trim details of garment are considered in relation to the design.</p>
3 Select block	<p>3.1 Client is measured.</p> <p>3.2 Pattern production is planned according to quality standards and workplace procedures.</p> <p>3.3 Appropriate block is selected and size adjustments made.</p>
4 Create pattern	4.1 Design lines are proportioned on dress form.

	<p>4.2 <i>Patternmaking principles</i> are applied in developing pattern.</p> <p>4.3 <i>Methods and formulas</i> used are documented.</p> <p>4.4 Pattern is produced from existing block to customer design and fit.</p> <p>4.5 Pattern pieces are checked for accuracy of seam allowances, seam match, hems and functional openings.</p> <p>4.6 Pattern pieces are labelled and <i>markings</i> completed.</p>
5 Test and finalise pattern	<p>5.1 Toile or garment segments are tested for proportioning and fit.</p> <p>5.2 Fitting is performed to ensure that prototype meets with customer satisfaction.</p> <p>5.3 Any pattern alterations are completed and assessed to meet fit and design requirements.</p> <p>5.4 Pattern is finalised and checked to ensure accuracy, completeness and compliance to design specifications.</p> <p>5.5 Final patterns are directed to next production process.</p>
6 Complete work	<p>6.1 Pattern specification sheet is completed and attached to patterns for storage.</p> <p>6.2 Finished patterns are filed.</p>

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

OH&S practices

OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:

- manual handling techniques
- standard operating procedures
- personal protective equipment
- safe materials handling
- taking of rest breaks
- ergonomic arrangement of workplaces
- following marked walkways
- safe storage of equipment
- housekeeping
- reporting accidents and incidents
- other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

Patternmaking tools and equipment may include

- blocks
- dress form
- scissors
- square rule
- marker pens
- hole punch
- pins
- fashion triangle

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • French curve • pattern notcher • weights • tape measure
Style features may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • garment type, collar, sleeves, yoke, sides, openings, neckline, buttons, seams, zips, gathers, pleats, panels, tucks
Patternmaking principles include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • dart manipulation • adding fullness • contouring
Methods and formulas may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • deviations from standard patterns • sources of pattern components • pattern derivation methods and formulas • block construction methods and formulas • application of current industry practice
Pattern markings include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • appropriate seam allowance • notching • pattern information (size, style number, cutting instructions and identity) • darts • drill holes • grain line • stitching line

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • measure and fit a customer • identify and define design lines and features • choose existing block to suit work specifications • create, check and test patterns • make toile • communicate effectively with design team, customers, etc. • apply OH&S practices • maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment

Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • principles and concepts of patternmaking • customer and workplace fit requirements • cost efficiency in relation to patternmaking • typical garment fabrics, including weight and other characteristics • marker making procedures • cutting and garment construction • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • consistently achieve quality and production output requirements • undertake a range of activities associated with creating patterns • develop patterns with consideration to the characteristics of fabric and trimmings • construct garment toiles • test pattern • use manual or CAD systems • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records • communicate within the workplace • sequence operations • meet specifications • clarify and check task-related information • carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Pattern is completed according to workplace procedures.	2

Collect, analyse and organise information	Specifications and measurements are obtained and interpreted to guide development of pattern.	3
Plan and organise activities	Toile is made to test pattern with any necessary adjustments made to meet design and fit requirements.	2
Work with others and in teams	Designs are clarified with customer as required.	2
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Measurements are recorded accurately with ease and seam allowance included.	2
Solve problems	Patterns are tested for fit and proportion, with adjustments made where required.	3
Use technology	Machines and equipment are used to produce patterns and toiles.	2

LMTFD4016A Sew design prototypes

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to assemble a prototype garment using commercial machines.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to assembling garments to produce a garment that is not designed to be worn but will be used for the purposes of confirming elements of design and production requirements.</p> <p>This unit covers sewing and assembly skills only. Lay up, making marker and cutting skills to support the sewing of prototypes are covered in the unit LMTFD4011A Cut fabrics for prototype designs.</p> <p>Completion of sewing units LMTCL2001A Use a sewing machine, LMTCL2004A Sew components and LMTCL3002A Prepare and produce sewn garment would result in a higher level sewing ability and could therefore be used as evidence of competency against this unit.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Prepare for garment assembly	<p>1.1 Relevant information on design elements is collected and organised.</p> <p>1.2 Work pieces are prepared according to design concept.</p> <p>1.3 Pattern pieces are laid out and attached to the fabric to match fabric pattern, nap and weave.</p> <p>1.4 Garment components are laid out according to sequence of assembly operations.</p> <p>1.5 Workbench and seating are set up according to OH&S practices.</p> <p>1.6 Machines are set up and adjusted according to specifications for work.</p>
2 Assemble garment components	<p>2.1 Components are assembled according to OH&S practices, and accepted garment assembly techniques.</p> <p>2.2 Garment is checked for sizing and appearance.</p> <p>2.3 Garment is adjusted to better display design characteristics and correct fabric alignment, garment fitting and other features.</p>
3 Complete work	<p>3.1 Required hand sewing and finishing is undertaken according to design</p>

concept requirements.

- 3.2 Garment is pressed according to fabric requirements and garment construction details.
- 3.3 Quality and impact of finished garment is checked against original design concept.
- 3.4 ***Assembly issues*** are noted and communicated to ***appropriate personnel***.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Work pieces includes	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• pieces of fabric which have been cut according to the pattern requirements and may include:• a range of fabric types, including cottons, woollens, synthetics, velvets, lace, stretch, knitted, etc.• single and multi-directional prints• interfacings and linings
Attaching patterns to fabric includes	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• pinning• tacking
Components may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• sleeves• waistbands – straight/shaped• collars• cuffs• plackets• facings – neck, armhole• binds• zips (dress, skirt, trouser, invisible)• buttons and buttonholes
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• manual handling techniques• standard operating procedures• personal protective equipment• safe materials handling• taking of rest breaks• ergonomic arrangement of workplaces• following marked walkways• safe storage of equipment• housekeeping• reporting accidents and incidents• other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise
Machines may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• commercial sewing machine• three thread overlocker• zigzag sewing machine

Set-up includes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • correct thread, needle size and type, needle guard, tension setting and attachments • checking for worn components that may impact on sewing operations • routine cleaning and oiling
Garment assembly techniques includes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • straight sewing using a range of hem types (double fold, rolled, blind, stitched hem) • sewing techniques where the positioning, feeding and handling of work pieces involves contouring, stopping or handling skills required to accommodate fabric variations • gathering, easing, tucking • gluing and bonding
Hand sewing and finishing includes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • attaching buttons and other closures • attaching embellishments such as trims, badges, etc. • hemming and overstitching • gluing and bonding trims, etc.
Assembly issues may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • complex or time-consuming assembly • quality • difficulty in following pattern or design concepts • problems arising from material selection • issues relating to sizing or fabric cuts
Appropriate personnel may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • patternmakers • designers • production personnel • sample machinists

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • operate a commercial sewing and over locking machine to assemble a prototype garment • make adjustments to enhance the design • apply OH&S practices in a simulated work operations
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment

Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• techniques in using and maintaining three thread overlocker and commercial sewing machines• characteristics of a range of commercially available fabrics, including lace, woven and knitted fabrics and threads such as denim, single knits, tricot, gabardine• safety and environmental aspects of relevant garment assembly processes• sequence of operations for garment assembly• the impact of adjustments to garment components or seams• methods of assembling garment pieces for the purposes of prototype production• embellishments that are used in garment assembly• OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures• quality practices• workplace practices• recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• sew accurately using a commercial machine• read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material• maintain accurate records• communicate within the workplace• sequence operations• meet specifications• clarify and check task-related information• carry out work according to OH&S practice

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Assembly issues are communicated with appropriate personnel to assist in design modification	2
Collect, analyse and organise information	Pattern is received and analysed to guide assembly operations.	3
Plan and organise activities	Garment components are laid out and assembly completed in correct sequence to achieve design outcome.	2
Work with others and in teams	Assembly issues are communicated with appropriate personnel to assist in design modification	2
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Pattern pieces are laid out and instructions used to assemble garment.	2
Solve problems	Garment is adjusted to better display design elements	2
Use technology	Machines are used to produce garments	2

LMTFD4017A Source materials and resources for production of fashion designs

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to source materials and resources that are required for production of fashion designs.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to materials and resources used to produce garments and accessories and includes skills and knowledge required to locate and compare materials and resources needed for production.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Identify materials and resources required for production	<p>1.1 Different types of <i>fabric suppliers/contractors</i> are identified and researched.</p> <p>1.2 <i>Trims</i> required for production are identified.</p> <p>1.3 <i>Services</i> required for production are identified.</p> <p>1.4 Purpose and <i>specifications</i> of different materials and resources are identified.</p>
2 Identify materials and resources available in Australia	<p>2.1 <i>Suppliers/contractors</i> within Australia who service fashion industry are located.</p> <p>2.2 Materials and services that are available from different suppliers/contractors are identified and compared.</p> <p>2.3 Minimum order requirements for given suppliers/contractors are identified.</p>
3 Identify materials and resources available overseas	<p>3.1 Suppliers/contractors overseas that service fashion industry are located.</p> <p>3.2 Materials and services that are available from different suppliers/contractors are identified and compared.</p> <p>3.3 Costs incurred when purchasing overseas and mechanisms to minimise them are identified.</p>
4 Identify lead times and payment requirements	<p>4.1 Lead times required for different suppliers/contractors are identified and compared.</p> <p>4.2 Capacity of suppliers/contractors to meet delivery requirements are investigated and compared.</p>

- | | | |
|--|-----|---|
| | 4.3 | Payment options offered by suppliers/contractors are identified and compared. |
| | 4.4 | Capacity of suppliers/contractors to meet price and quality requirements are identified and compared. |
| 5 Identify costs of purchasing materials and resources | 5.1 | Costs, including <i>hidden costs</i> of purchases are identified. |
| | 5.2 | Costs of purchasing direct from overseas suppliers, contractors or manufacturers are compared to purchasing from local suppliers. |
| 6 Shipping options are determined | 6.1 | Most appropriate shipping and freight options to suit fashion industry are identified and compared. |
| | 6.2 | Role of shipping and customs agent is identified. |
| 7 Select and source materials and resources | 7.1 | Sources are compared against required specifications. |
| | 7.2 | Sources are selected based on their ability to meet required specifications. |
| | 7.3 | Orders are placed and monitored. |
| | 7.4 | Orders are received and checked. |
| | 7.5 | Documentation is completed. |
| 8 Follow quality processes | 8.1 | Quality standards for goods and services used in fashion industry are identified. |
| | 8.2 | Protocols for goods received and inspected are established. |
| | 8.3 | Continuous improvement of process is carried out. |
| | 8.4 | Documentation is completed. |

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

- | | |
|---|--|
| Fabric suppliers/
contractors may
include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• wholesalers• importers• mills• jobbers• converters |
| Trims may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• buttons• threads• zippers• interlinings• beads |
| Services may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• patternmaking• embroidery• dyers• knitting• cut make trim• pleaters |

Specifications may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • price • quality • quantity • time requirements • special features
Suppliers/ contractors may be sourced through	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • yellow pages • web • trade directories • trade shows • networking • agents • trade magazines
Hidden costs may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • minimum order requirements • shipping • wastage • quality • tariffs/duties
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual handling techniques • standard operating procedures • personal protective equipment • safe materials handling • taking of rest breaks • ergonomic arrangement of workplaces • following marked walkways • safe storage of equipment • housekeeping • reporting accidents and incidents • other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • research at least five different materials and resources used in the fashion industry • apply all information in the comparison and selection of the most suitable supplier/contractor • access and compare Australian and overseas supply chains
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• using OH&S practices• recording and reporting accidents and incidents• assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes• recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions• completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	Demonstrates knowledge of: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• information resources on materials, resources and suppliers• criteria for making comparisons• workplace practices and procedures for purchasing and receiving• OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures• quality practices• workplace practices• recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	Demonstrates skills to: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• use computer operations for internet access and searches• analyse performance characteristics• compare findings• communicate with suppliers• document findings and orders• read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material• maintain accurate records• communicate within the workplace• sequence operations• meet specifications• clarify and check task-related information• carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Supply specifications and delivery requirements are provided to suppliers in order to receive complete and comparable quotes.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Information on availability, quality, price and delivery procedure are obtained and compared against specifications.	3
Plan and organise activities	Supply sourcing is planned and organised in order to meet production requirements.	3
Work with others and in teams	Supply requirements are checked with colleagues to assist in meeting their production requirements.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Quantity and costing comparisons are made to determine most cost-effective purchasing and delivery arrangements.	3
Solve problems	Alternative suppliers are found and used if supply arrangements do not meet enterprise needs.	3
Use technology	Computing technology is used to research and catalogue supplier details.	3

LMTFD4018A Use and apply sizing systems appropriate for fashion design

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to use and apply sizing systems appropriate for designing garments.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to sizing standards that are required in the design, production and retailing of garments.</p> <p>Work is conducted according to defined procedures.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Describe sizing system	<p>1.1 Australian approaches to sizing standards are identified and described.</p> <p>1.2 Sizing systems are identified and described.</p> <p>1.3 International sizing systems are identified.</p> <p>1.4 Advantages and disadvantages of sizing systems are described.</p>
2 Analyse sizing requirements	<p>2.1 Intended purpose of the design is established.</p> <p>2.2 Design specifications are read and interpreted.</p> <p>2.3 Design brief is clarified with designer where necessary.</p> <p>2.4 Body measurements and their effect on sizing are analysed.</p> <p>2.5 Body characteristics and their effect on sizing are analysed.</p>
3 Verify design sizing	<p>3.1 Appropriate sizes from sizing system for the design are identified and explained.</p> <p>3.2 Effects of inappropriate sizing for the design are identified and explained.</p> <p>3.3 Size chart is developed where required.</p>

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Sizing system may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• women's sizes such as 10, 12, 14, 16, etc.• men's sizes such as 92, 95, 95, etc.• women's bra sizes such as 12A, 12B, 12C, 12D, 12DD, etc.• children's sizes such as 1-7, 8-12, etc.• babies' sizes such as 0000, 000, 00, 0
Body measurements	<p>Body measurements must include all measurements as required for labelling according to legislation requirements which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• height and weight• reference points such as nape, acromion, waist point, seat vertex, abdomen vertex, carpus, neck base, upper sternum, bust point, pelvic bone• levels such as crown, shoulder, scye, bust or chest, waist, hip, crotch, knee• girth measurements such as waist, bust or chest, hip, high hip, upper and under bust, head circumference, upper arm, wrist, thigh, calf, ankle, heel/instep• horizontal measurements such as shoulder, shoulder breadth, across front, across back, bust point to bust point• vertical measurements such as nape to centre back waist, nape to neck base, nape to bust or chest, nape to waist, nape to wrist, centre front waist to floor, centre back waist to floor, right-hand side waist to floor, left-hand side waist to floor, waist to hip, inside leg, body rise, arm length, neck length• cup size• shoe size• seat prominence• thigh• knee• instep• calf• posture
Body characteristics may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• genetic, developmental and structural influences• shape classifications such as hourglass, rectangular, pear, inverted triangle• anthropometric classifications – somatotypes• shoulder slope – raised, normal, sloping• body sway and postural asymmetry – according to lower and upper body• proportions – tall, short or average, short or long waisted, mid-body shortness

Inappropriate sizing may mean	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> that the proportion of the design will be lost if the size varies significantly from the fit model or the intended purpose of the design
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> manual handling techniques standard operating procedures personal protective equipment safe materials handling taking of rest breaks ergonomic arrangement of workplaces following marked walkways safe storage of equipment housekeeping reporting accidents and incidents other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> describe national and international sizing scope and interpret design brief analyse and assess sizing for design apply OH&S practices in work operations maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> organising work completing tasks identifying improvements using workplace practices using OH&S practices recording and reporting accidents and incidents assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	<p>Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.</p>
Context for assessment	<p>Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.</p>
Interdependent assessment	<p>This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.</p>
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> quality standards and garment handling procedures

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • sequence of operations • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • take measurements • use numeric calculations • consistently achieve quality and production output requirements • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records • communicate within the workplace • sequence operations • meet specifications • clarify and check task-related information • carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Sizing system appropriate for the design is recorded according to workplace practices.	2
Collect, analyse and organise information	Design specifications and fit model measurements are interpreted and analysed for appropriate sizing.	2
Plan and organise activities	Prepare measurements for assessment against selected sizing standard.	3
Work with others and in teams	Work with designer and product development team to determine correct sizing.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Measurements are accurately taken, calculated and recorded.	3
Solve problems	Sizing issues for design are discussed and rectified.	3
Use technology	Appropriate machines and equipment are used as required.	3

LMTFD4019A Use colourisation techniques on fabrics

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to use fabric colourisation techniques to create new finishes for design effects.
Prerequisites	LMTCL2003A Identify fibres and fabrics LMTCL3001A Identify fabric performance and handling requirements
Application	<p>The unit applies to the use of a variety of colourisation techniques such as dyeing or printing on a range of fabrics used to produce garments and accessories. Evidence of competency in this skill would require a minimum of four types of colourisation techniques. Colourisation techniques would be specified to be used in the design process.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Identify colourisation techniques	1.1 Types of <i>Fabric colourisation techniques</i> are identified. 1.2 Effects of colourisation techniques on different <i>fabrics</i> are described. 1.3 Processes used to achieve different colourisation techniques are described.
2 Describe uses of colourisation techniques in design process	2.1 <i>Uses of colour</i> to inform and inspire design are described. 2.2 Role of colourisation as production tool is described, including impact on process. 2.3 Effect of colourisation on the design are described
3 Colourise fabrics	3.1 Colourisation techniques are applied to a variety of fabrics. 3.2 Process is analysed to assess outcome. 3.3 Colourisation is modified as required.
4 Ensure workplace standards are met	4.1 <i>OH&S practices</i> are implemented in colourising fabrics. 4.2 Colourisation effects and garment quality meet quality standards.
5 Document process	5.1 Techniques used to colourise fabrics and their effects are documented for future reference. 5.2 Documentation is filed and stored.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Fabric colourisation techniques may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• dyeing – shibori, resist (batik)• printing – block, silk screen, transfer, roller, stencilling
Fabrics may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• knitted fabrics, including weft knits and warp knits• woven fabrics, including plain, twill, satin, dobby and jacquard• non-woven fabrics such as felts, nets, braids and bonded
Uses of colour may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• dyeing fabrics to match others• over-printing fabrics to create a new print design• mixing colours to create something different• removing colour to create print design• emphasise texture and patterns
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• manual handling techniques• standard operating procedures• personal protective equipment• safe materials handling• taking of rest breaks• ergonomic arrangement of workplaces• following marked walkways• safe storage of equipment• housekeeping• reporting accidents and incidents• other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• identify fibres and fabrics• determine effects of colourising fabrics• use colourisation techniques to achieve design effects• apply OH&S practices in work operations
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• organising work• completing tasks• identifying improvements• using workplace practices

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • uses and performance characteristics of fabrics • information resources on fibres and fabrics • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • analyse performance characteristics • use tools and equipment associated with colouring fabrics • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records • communicate within the workplace • sequence operations • meet specifications • clarify and check task-related information • carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

1 – Perform tasks effectively

2 – Manage tasks

3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Effect to be achieved through colourisation, and its impact on the design are described.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Information on fabrics is collected and analysed to determine fabric response to colourisation.	3

Plan and organise activities	Colourisation is planned for appropriate stage of the production sequence.	2
Work with others and in teams	Fabric colourisation is described for others to conduct.	2
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Actual results of colourisation are compared to expected results.	2
Solve problems	Criteria are applied to determine fabric response to colourisations.	3
Use technology	Colourisation tools and techniques are described.	3

LMTFD4020A Use electronic fashion design tools

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to use a range of electronic design programs and equipment such as software programs and computing technology.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to the creation of designs, patterns or production specifications using electronic programs and equipment such as graphic and design software, computers and peripherals, and specialised equipment.</p> <p>This unit requires the use of computers. If training in the use of computers is required then the unit LMTGN2009A Operate computing technology in a TCF workplace should also be selected</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Identify design brief	<p>1.1 <i>Design specifications</i> are identified and interpreted.</p> <p>1.2 Suitable <i>programs and equipment</i> are identified.</p> <p>1.3 <i>Garment considerations</i> are identified.</p> <p>1.4 <i>Production requirements</i> are identified.</p>
2 Use design tools	<p>2.1 Design programs and equipment are used to create required designs, patterns or production specifications.</p> <p>2.2 Design programs and equipment are used to modify and edit designs, patterns or production specifications.</p> <p>2.3 Design programs and equipment are used to test designs, patterns or production specifications.</p> <p>2.4 Design programs and equipment are used according to <i>OH&S practices</i>.</p>
3 Assess electronic outputs	<p>3.1 Outputs generated using electronic design programs are assessed against design specifications and production requirements.</p> <p>3.2 Outputs are presented to appropriate personnel to assess accuracy and completeness.</p> <p>3.3 Improvements are made as required.</p>

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 4 Maintain electronic design systems | 4.1 Designs, patterns or production specifications are created, stored, organised and protected. |
| | 4.2 Design programs and equipment are used, maintained and stored. |

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Design specifications may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• visual content and presentation• style details• fabric types and quantities• production requirements• special effects or features• quality criteria• finishing details• sizing |
| Programs and equipment may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• computer• software programs, e.g. computer-aided design (CAD), Illustrator, Photoshop• hardware peripherals such as scanners, printers• specialised equipment |
| Garment considerations may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• type of fabric• colour of fabric• purpose of garment• quality standards |
| Production requirements may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• timeline• available resources• instructions• documentation |
| OH&S practices | <p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• manual handling techniques• standard operating procedures• personal protective equipment• safe materials handling• taking of rest breaks• ergonomic arrangement of workplaces• following marked walkways• safe storage of equipment• housekeeping• reporting accidents and incidents• other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise |

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • plan work tasks to achieve specifications • prepare workstation and work before commencing operations • use electronic tools and equipment • use software programs • apply OH&S practices in work operations • maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	<p>Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.</p>
Context for assessment	<p>Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.</p>
Interdependent assessment	<p>This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.</p>
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • principles of design • electronic equipment and program features • editing tools and procedures • operating procedures • garment production requirements • quality standards • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • receive and interpret design brief • use electronic and program functions • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records

- communicate within the workplace
- sequence operations
- meet specifications
- clarify and check task-related information
- carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Design concepts are communicated to clients.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Design brief and specifications are interpreted and assessed against software capabilities.	3
Plan and organise activities	Software program is set up to create designs or patterns.	3
Work with others and in teams	Information is exchanged with client, production staff and design team to assess viability of designs.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Calculations are conducted to determine design proportions and production specifications.	3
Solve problems	Design features are translated into specifications for production.	3
Use technology	Software programs are used to create detailed designs or patterns.	3

LMTFD4021A Drape fabrics to make patterns

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to drape fabrics to make patterns.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>This unit applies to using draping techniques for creating a basic fitted foundation. This applies to the creation of fitted blocks such as a bodice and a skirt and does not include draping of set-in sleeves. Draping is conducted on a body form such as a mannequin or model.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology
ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Prepare draping tools and equipment	<p>1.1 Work area is set up according to <i>OH&S practices</i> and specifications for work.</p> <p>1.2 <i>Draping tools and equipment</i> are selected and prepared.</p>
2 Prepare model form for draping	<p>2.1 <i>Body reference points</i> on model form are identified and marked.</p> <p>2.2 Any additional model form preparation is identified.</p> <p>2.3 Measurements are checked for conformance to required specifications.</p>
3 Prepare fabric for draping	<p>3.1 Dimensions of fabric piece required for <i>each section/piece to be draped</i> are estimated.</p> <p>3.2 Warp, weft and bias of fabric are identified.</p> <p>3.3 Fabric handling qualities are identified and assessed.</p>
4 Plan drape	<p>4.1 Requirements for adding wearing ease for movement are identified.</p> <p>4.2 Requirements for manipulating dart excess are identified.</p> <p>4.3 Seam positioning is planned.</p> <p>4.4 <i>Drape plan</i> is developed.</p>
5 Perform draping	<p>5.1 Fabric is pinned on model form, relating body reference points and fabric grains.</p> <p>5.2 Fabric is moulded and manipulated to fit model form.</p> <p>5.3 Ease is added to allow for movement.</p> <p>5.4 Fabric is smoothed or manipulated over contours of model form.</p> <p>5.5 Darts and seams are formed and pinned.</p> <p>5.6 Drape is prepared for truing.</p>

6 Transfer drape to paper	6.1 Drape is removed from model form. 6.2 Lines are drawn or ruled on drape at pin positions. 6.3 Drape is used as a template to create paper pattern or block. 6.4 Pattern or block is trued and marked.
7 Produce final pattern	7.1 Pattern is produced. 7.2 Pattern pieces are checked for accuracy of seam allowances, hems, functional openings and closures, seam match, and flow-through. 7.3 Pattern pieces are labelled and markings completed. 7.4 Pattern is finalised and checked to ensure accuracy, completeness and compliance to specifications. 7.5 Specification sheets are completed and attached to pattern blocks for storage. 7.6 Finished patterns are filed and stored.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

OH&S practices	OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual handling techniques • standard operating procedures • personal protective equipment • safe materials handling • taking of rest breaks • ergonomic arrangement of workplaces • following marked walkways • safe storage of equipment • housekeeping • reporting accidents and incidents • other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise
----------------	--

Draping tools and equipment may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • model form • narrow tape/ribbon • tape measure • pen/pencil • scissors • square rule • marker pens • hole punch • pins • fashion triangle • French curve • pattern notcher • weights
---	--

Body reference points may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • bust • waist • hips • centre front • centre back • side seam
Fabric may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • toile fabric • sample fabric
Pieces to be draped must include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • front bodice • back bodice • front skirt • back skirt • other pieces to be draped may include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • front extended line • back extended line
Fabric handling qualities may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • fall • stretch • stability • drape
Drape plan may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • adding fullness (pleats, tucks, gathers) • multiple darts/division of darts • symmetric and/or asymmetric design features • cowls, twists, knots
Markings include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • appropriate seam widths • notches • dart lines • drill holes • grain line • cutting instructions • stitching lines

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • prepare the model form for draping • prepare tools, equipment and fabric pieces • develop a draping plan • carry out the draping on the model form • transfer the drape to paper • produce and label a final pattern/block
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • principles and concepts of patternmaking • customer and workplace requirements • cost efficiency in relation to patternmaking • range of typical garment fabrics, including weight and other characteristics • cutting and garment construction • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • consistently achieve quality and production output requirements • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records • communicate within the workplace • sequence operations • meet specifications • clarify and check task-related information • carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Drape is transferred to paper.	2
Collect, analyse and organise information	Draping information is transferred accurately to pattern.	2
Plan and organise activities	Plan and prepare model form for draping.	2
Work with others and in teams	Work with designer and product development team to perform drape.	2
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Ease, seam allowance and darts are determined during draping.	2
Solve problems	Truing of drape.	2
Use technology	Tools and equipment are used efficiently.	2

LMTFD5001A Design bras and swimwear

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to design structured bras and swimwear for production.
Prerequisites	LMTCL2010A Modify patterns to create basic styles LMTFD4003A Assist in preparation of preliminary design concepts
Application	<p>The unit applies to the design for production of bras and swimwear that include structured foundations such as boning, underwire, corsetry, etc. Bras and swimwear that do not include these components are covered in other fashion design units.</p> <p>Design relates to individual garments where a variety of fabrics may be used to produce the final garment. The extent and nature of product design will depend on the products individual workplace.</p> <p>Discretion and judgement are required in planning and selecting processes.</p> <p>.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Research fashion to determine design	<p>1.1 Current national and international <i>fashion trends</i> for bras or swimwear are researched and analysed.</p> <p>1.2 <i>Current practices</i> in bra and swimwear construction are researched and analysed.</p> <p>1.3 Market analysis is conducted.</p> <p>1.4 Story themes are developed using fashion magazines, samples, swatches, trims and colour palette.</p>
2 Research production information	<p>2.1 Design parameters are clarified, in consultation with production manager, sales team, management and client, as required.</p> <p>2.2 Trends in <i>fabrics</i> and <i>components</i> are researched for performance, colour, availability, care and maintenance requirements and suitability to design.</p> <p>2.3 Technical requirements associated with production are assessed within specified guidelines.</p> <p>2.4 Any additional expertise required for design is identified.</p>

- | | |
|--------------------------|---|
| 3 Develop design concept | 3.1 Preliminary design concepts are developed. |
| | 3.2 Ideas are discussed with team members to assess and improve design. |
| | 3.3 Design concept is developed to meet client brief. |
| | 3.4 Artwork, drawings and <i>specifications</i> are prepared in appropriate format, including any additional documentation that may be required. |
| | 3.5 Fit and performance standards are addressed in design concepts. |
| 4 Present the design | 4.1 Design concept is prepared for presentation. |
| | 4.2 <i>Presentation skills</i> are used to convey features and benefits of the design. |
| | 4.3 Acceptance and approval of the design is promoted. |
| | 4.4 Design is presented to target needs of <i>audience</i> . |
| | 4.5 Records are maintained and documentation prepared. |

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Current practices may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• styling features relating to health effects of bra and swimwear construction• appropriate bra and swimwear structure for special client groups, including bras and swimwear for maternity, mastectomy, junior and costume wear• sports and fuller figure bras and swimwear and the need for extra support• use of specialist materials and trims |
| Fashion trends may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• colour• fabrics• styles• trims• components |
| Fabrics must include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• one-way stretch• two-way stretch• no-stretch |
| Components may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• straps• hooks• elastic• fasteners• ribbon• underwire• foam padding• oil filled straps• rings• fine lace and delicate fabrics |

Specifications may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • budget • type of garment • style requirements • fit model specifications • size range • timeline • design restrictions or conditions
Audience may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • management • client • patternmaker • sample machinist • fitting and grading specialist
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual handling techniques • standard operating procedures • personal protective equipment • safe materials handling • taking of rest breaks • ergonomic arrangement of workplaces • following marked walkways • safe storage of equipment • housekeeping • reporting accidents and incidents • other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • research fashion trends for bras or swimwear • research product information • assess technical requirements • develop design concept • develop designs for one-way and two-way stretch fabrics • communicate effectively with design team, management, production, clients, etc. • present design concept • maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• recording and reporting accidents and incidents• assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes• recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions• completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	Demonstrates knowledge of: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• elements and principles of design and how they are used to create good design in the bra or swimwear industry• industry, global and local trends• garment construction• cutting, moulding and machine operations• fabrics and textiles• research sources• colour or colour mix and interpretation• fabrics, fibres, trims, components, accessories and their properties and characteristics• OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures• quality practices• workplace practices• recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	Demonstrates skills to: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• produce sketches and drawings manually or using CAD systems• communicate effectively with individuals, work groups and management• interpret and carry out established procedures• document and transfer information• work within strict timeframes• pay attention to detail• read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material• maintain accurate records• communicate within the workplace• sequence operations• meet specifications• clarify and check task-related information• carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Design information and ideas is conveyed through a variety of media to individuals or groups.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Research is conducted to guide and inform the design process.	3
Plan and organise activities	Presentation of designs is planned with others in the design team.	3
Work with others and in teams	Collaborative relationships are developed to facilitate the accomplishment of work goals.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Costs are accurately calculated and assessed according to budget availability.	3
Solve problems	Processes are adjusted effectively to work within new work structures, processes, requirements or cultures.	3
Use technology	Internet research is conducted to guide the design process.	3

LMTFD5002A Develop and test patterns for bras and swimwear

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to develop and test patterns for bra and swimwear production using an existing block and applying patternmaking principles.
Prerequisites	LMTCL2004A Sew components LMTCL3009A Develop patterns from a block using basic patternmaking principles
Application	<p>The unit applies to the patterns for production of bras and swimwear that include structured foundations such as boning, underwire, corsetry, etc. Bras and swimwear that does not include these components are covered in other patternmaking units.</p> <p>This unit applies to the development and testing of a pattern from an existing block, utilising advanced principles of patternmaking.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology
ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Prepare workstation	<p>1.1 Workstation and seating are set up according to <i>OH&S practices</i> and specifications for work.</p> <p>1.2 <i>Patternmaking tools and equipment</i> are selected and prepared.</p> <p>1.3 Any additional materials or equipment required to perform task are selected and prepared.</p> <p>1.4 Patternmaking tools, equipment and supplies are laid out in preparation for patternmaking.</p>
2 Interpret the design	<p>2.1 Design drawings and specifications are interpreted and clarified with designer as required.</p> <p>2.2 Design lines and <i>style features</i> are identified.</p> <p>2.3 <i>Fabric</i> characteristics and performance, and trims, <i>components</i> and finishings are considered in relation to the design.</p> <p>2.4 Any <i>special construction methods</i> for bras and swimwear are considered in relation to the design.</p> <p>2.5 Size standards for fit are determined.</p>

3 Select block	3.1 Pattern production is planned according to quality standards. 3.2 Appropriate block is determined for development of bra or swimwear pattern. 3.3 Appropriate block is selected and retrieved from storage system.
4 Develop pattern	4.1 <i>Advanced principles of patternmaking</i> are applied in constructing bra or swimwear pattern. 4.2 <i>Methods and formulas</i> used are documented. 4.3 Pattern is produced from existing block to specified measurements. 4.4 Pattern pieces are checked for accuracy of seam allowances, seam match, hems, multiple layers and tolerances. 4.5 Pattern pieces are labelled and <i>markings</i> completed.
5 Test and finalise pattern	5.1 Segments are constructed. 5.2 Segments are examined and assessed for compatibility of pattern to design. 5.3 Construction problems are identified and documented. 5.4 Fitting is performed to ensure that bra or swimwear meets design criteria and fit. 5.5 Pattern is checked to ensure it meets Australian Standards. 5.6 Any pattern alterations are completed and assessed to meet fitting requirements. 5.7 Pattern is finalised and checked to ensure accuracy, completeness and compliance to design specifications. 5.8 Garment is checked to ensure it meets all requirements to be commercially viable, manufacturing specifications and fit.
6 Complete work	6.1 Specification sheets, including trade drawing, are completed and attached to patterns for storage. 6.2 Finished patterns are filed and stored.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

OH&S practices

OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:

- manual handling techniques
- standard operating procedures
- personal protective equipment
- safe materials handling
- taking of rest breaks
- ergonomic arrangement of workplaces
- following marked walkways
- safe storage of equipment
- housekeeping
- reporting accidents and incidents
- other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

Patternmaking tools and equipment may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • scissors • square rule • marker pens • hole punch • pins • fashion triangle • French curve • pattern notcher • weights • tape measure • CAD terminal and program
Style features may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • garment type (bra, swimwear) • number of panels • sleeves • sides • openings • neckline • seams • gathers • pleats • panel tucks
Fabrics must include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • one-way stretch • two-way stretch • no-stretch (bias cut fabrics)
Components may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • straps • hooks • elastic • fasteners • ribbon • underwire • foam padding • oil filled straps • rings
Special construction methods may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • fusing • gluing • moulding • sewing requirements • seam allowances • stitch requirements • seam finishes such as flat seam, blind hem, French seam
Advanced principles of patternmaking include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • pivoting • square blocking • contouring

Methods and formulas may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • deviations from standard patterns • sources of pattern components • pattern derivation methods and formulas • block construction methods and formulas • application of current industry practice
----------------------------------	--

Pattern markings include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • appropriate seam allowance • notching • pattern information (size, style number, cutting instructions and identity) • darts • drill holes • grain line • cutting line • stitching line
--------------------------	---

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • identify and define design lines and features • create patterns to suit one-way, two-way and no-stretch fabrics • choose existing block to suit work specifications • create, check and test patterns • make prototype • communicate effectively with design team, customers, etc. • apply OH&S practices in work operations • maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.

Underpinning knowledge	Demonstrates knowledge of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • principles and concepts of patternmaking • customer and workplace fit requirements • cost efficiency in relation to patternmaking • range of garment fabrics, including weight and other characteristics • marker making procedures • cutting and garment construction • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	Demonstrates skills to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • consistently achieve quality and production output requirements • undertake a range of activities associated with creating patterns • develop patterns with consideration to the characteristics of fabric, trimmings and components • construct garment toiles • test pattern and recommend alternative construction methods • use manual or CAD systems • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records • communicate within the workplace • sequence operations • meet specifications • clarify and check task-related information • carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Specifications and pattern are completed according to workplace procedures.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Specifications and measurements are obtained and interpreted to guide development of patterns.	3
Plan and organise activities	Patterns are tested and any necessary adjustments are made to meet design requirements.	3
Work with others and in teams	Designs are clarified with designer as required.	3

Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Measurements are recorded accurately with ease and seam allowance added.	3
Solve problems	Patterns are tested for fit with adjustments made where required.	3
Use technology	Machines and equipment are used to produce patterns.	3

LMTFD5003A Analyse fit model

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to analyse and select the fit model used to present sample garments and derive garment fit and size standard.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to the size standard representations that are required in the design, manufacture and retail of fashion for the target market to ensure that the targeted customer population is addressed in size range and appropriate data is obtained from research. This data also provides a solid basis for design, pattern derivation and garment construction for a sizing system.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology
ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Scope design brief in relation to <i>target market</i>	<p>1.1 Profile of target market population is obtained.</p> <p>1.2 Demographics of market population are identified.</p> <p>1.3 Intended purpose of design is established.</p> <p>1.4 Design brief is interpreted and appropriate sizing system and fit model is selected to represent target population.</p> <p>1.5 Where necessary design brief is clarified with designer.</p> <p>1.6 Approval of fit model for design brief is approved by stakeholders.</p> <p>1.7 Communication and work schedule is developed with fit model for measurement taking, fittings and presentation of garments.</p>
2 Measure fit model	<p>2.1 Tools and equipment are obtained and fit model prepared for measurement and or image capture.</p> <p>2.2 Body reference points are established and marked.</p> <p>2.3 Body measurements of fit model are taken and recorded.</p> <p>2.4 Designer and product development team are consulted for analysis of measurements.</p>
3 Assess physical characteristics	<p>3.1 Body characteristics are identified and compared to standard body.</p> <p>3.2 Unique features are identified and assessed for potential problems in fit.</p> <p>3.3 Information on body characteristics of fit model is recorded.</p>

4 Select representation of fit model	<p>4.1 Types of dress forms or 3D avatars available to designers and technicians are identified and evaluated according to resources.</p> <p>4.2 Comparisons to fit model are made and appropriate representation is selected.</p>
<p>RANGE STATEMENT</p> <p>The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.</p>	
Target market may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • plus sizes • petit sizes • teen • mature age • baby • toddler
Demographics may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • age • ethnicity • gender
Sizing system may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • women's sizes such as 10, 12, 14, 16, etc. • men's sizes such as 92, 95, 98, etc. • women's bra sizes such as 12A, 12B, 12C, 12D, 12DD, etc. • children's sizes such as 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, etc. • babies' sizes such as 0000, 000, 00, 0, etc.
Tools and equipment may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual or electronic tape measure • image capturing devices • pen/pencil • measure chart • tape, cord or elastic • eraser • Australian Standard Chart
Body measurements may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • height and weight • body reference points such as nape, acromion, waist point, seat vertex, abdomen vertex, carpus, neck base, upper sternum, bust point, pelvic bone • levels such as crown, shoulder, scye, bust or chest, waist, hip, crotch, knee • girth measurements such as waist, bust or chest, hip, high hip, upper and under bust, head circumference, upper arm, wrist, thigh, calf, ankle, heel/instep • horizontal measurements such as shoulder, shoulder breadth, across front, across back, bust point to bust point • vertical measurements such as nape to centre back waist, nape to neck base, nape to bust or chest, nape to waist, nape to wrist, centre front waist to floor, centre back waist to floor, right-hand side waist to

	<p>floor, left-hand side waist to floor, waist to hip, inside leg, body rise, arm length, neck length</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • cup size • shoulder angle • seat prominence • thigh • knee • instep • calf
Body characteristics may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • posture • genetic, developmental and structural influences • shape classifications such as hourglass, rectangular, pear, inverted triangle • anthropometric classifications – somatotypes • shoulder slope – raised, normal, sloping • body sway and postural asymmetry – according to lower and upper body • proportions – short or long waisted, mid-body shortness
Standard body may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Australian Standards, international standards, and recommended size charts • proprietary data developed in-house or through external sources which define the figure as proportional, aligned and falling within appropriate weight for age parameters for target population
Unique features may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • common postural faults such as forward head, rounding of shoulders, anterior/posterior pelvic tilts, sway back, flat back • prominent features such as protruding abdomen, bust or seat • spinal and pelvic rotation • foot alignment such as supinated or pronated foot • arm types such as very thin or heavy • leg types such as bow legs or knock knees • neck length such as long or short
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual handling techniques • standard operating procedures • personal protective equipment • safe materials handling • taking of rest breaks • ergonomic arrangement of workplaces • following marked walkways • safe storage of equipment • housekeeping • reporting accidents and incidents • other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • scope and interpret design brief • select and measure fit model accurately • analyse and assess physical characteristics • record measurements • select appropriate representation of fit model for use in product development
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • consistently achieve quality and production output requirements • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records • communicate within the workplace • sequence operations • meet specifications • clarify and check task-related information • carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Garment fit and suitability is evaluated on fit model with prospective buyer.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Measurements are recorded in measurement chart and transferred to specification sheet.	3
Plan and organise activities	Fit model is scheduled and prepared for measurement and assessment.	3
Work with others and in teams	Designer and product development team are consulted to research appropriate fit model.	2
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Body measurements are calculated.	3
Solve problems	Fit model appropriate for target market is selected.	3
Use technology	Electronic tools are used for calculation.	2

LMTFD5004A Develop marketing plans for fashion products

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to plan marketing and promotional activities to support the sales of fashion products.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to marketing activities typical to the promotion and sale of fashion products. Development of marketing plans may be central to the work role or completed as part of the overall sale of design concepts to clients. All proposed marketing activities must be appropriate to the price point of the fashion design and the overall objectives of the client. Marketing plans may specify details for events such as fashion design launches, fashion parades or shows and exhibitions or target strategies such as advertising and promotional campaigns.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling

Sector Fashion design

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Identify key elements of fashion design	<p>1.1 Features and benefits of fashion design are identified.</p> <p>1.2 Target market is researched and needs and expectations in relation to fashion design are identified.</p> <p>1.3 Price point of design is identified.</p> <p>1.4 Marketing budget for fashion product is identified.</p> <p>1.5 Other relevant details that may affect marketing activities are identified.</p>
2 Establish marketing objectives	<p>2.1 Client position and range of fashion products in marketplace are identified.</p> <p>2.2 Marketing objectives and sales targets are established with client.</p> <p>2.3 Product pricing strategy and position in market are established.</p> <p>2.4 Packaging and distribution requirements of fashion design are established.</p>
3 Research and determine marketing options	<p>3.1 Appropriate media are identified to reach target market.</p> <p>3.2 Uses of media are determined and appropriate strategies selected.</p> <p>3.3 Marketing event options are explored and assessed for effectiveness in marketing fashion design.</p>

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| | 3.4 Promotional activities are selected for relevance to fashion design. |
| | 3.5 Timing of marketing activities is explored. |
| | 3.6 Costings of marketing options are determined. |
| 4 Develop and present marketing plan | 4.1 Marketing cycle of fashion product is identified. |
| | 4.2 Marketing plan is developed which details marketing activities. |
| | 4.3 Marketing plan is assessed for its effectiveness in meeting marketing objectives, timing and budget requirements. |
| | 4.4 Marketing plan is presented and discussed with client. |
| | 4.5 Client response is received and integrated into further marketing proposals. |
| 5 Document marketing plan | 5.1 Marketing plan is documented according to industry practices . |
| | 5.2 Reports on marketing opportunities and strategies are documented and presented to relevant persons in the workplace. |

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Other relevant details may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • packaging or distribution requirements • production timelines or requirements • distribution outlets • designer reputation • style characteristics |
| Media may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • print, e.g. magazines, regional and metropolitan newspapers • audio, e.g. radio • visual, e.g. video, television, DVD • electronic, e.g. email, websites |
| Uses of media may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • editorials • advertising • photos • testimonials |
| Marketing event options may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • launches • fashion parades • exhibitions • demonstrations • press conferences |
| Promotional activities may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • gimmicks • point of sale and merchandising • special offers • product branding activities • packaging features such as labelling • display and presentation |

Industry practices may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • formatting and structure • inclusion of pictures and style and design details • promotion of features and benefits • reporting verbally or in writing • oral, written or visual communication • inclusion of marketing objectives • inclusion of adequate detail
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual handling techniques • standard operating procedures • personal protective equipment • safe materials handling • taking of rest breaks • ergonomic arrangement of workplaces • following marked walkways • safe storage of equipment • housekeeping • reporting accidents and incidents • other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, the Range Statement, Evidence Guide, the Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • identify appropriate options for marketing specific fashion design • marketing objectives • identify features and benefits of fashion designs according to needs and expectations of the target market • coordinate options and activities to overall marketing plan • document marketing plan
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment

Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• elements of marketing mix• research tools and strategies• marketing practices in the fashion industry• concepts of marketing cycle and product life cycle• marketing tools and media for the fashion industry• international regulations, pricing structures, import/export factors, production times, quality assurance factors and production/marketing arrangements (where appropriate)• relevant OH&S legislation, regulatory requirements and codes of practice• OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures• quality practices• workplace practices• recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• access, interpret and use data from a range of sources• make recommendations• select marketing procedures or processes• prepare and present reports and information in appropriate formats• read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material• maintain accurate records• communicate within the workplace• sequence operations• meet specifications• clarify and check task-related information• carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Marketing plans are documented.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Research information is gathered and used to guide and justify marketing plans.	3
Plan and organise activities	Marketing activities are selected and sequenced to meet promotional objectives for fashion design.	3
Work with others and in teams	Sales and production staff, designers, media, distributors, etc. are used to assist in the development of marketing plans.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Costings are calculated for marketing activities.	3
Solve problems	Marketing options are selected to achieve optimal effectiveness in meeting budget and timing constraints.	3
Use technology	Marketing options are researched and developed using the internet and appropriate project planning software.	3

LMTFD5005A Manipulate fabrics to create new finishes

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to use manipulation techniques to create decoration for fabric design effects.
Prerequisites	LMTCL2003A Identify fibres and fabrics LMTCL3001A Identify fabric performance and handling requirements
Application	<p>The unit applies to the manipulation of a range of textiles used in the production of garments and accessories. Evidence of competency in this skill requires a minimum of three types of manipulation.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Identify manipulation techniques	1.1 <i>Types of fabric manipulation</i> are identified. 1.2 Effects of manipulation on different <i>textiles</i> are described. 1.3 Processes used to achieve different manipulations are described.
2 Describe uses of manipulation in design process	2.1 Uses of manipulation to inform and inspire design are described. 2.2 Role of manipulation as a production tool is described. 2.3 Effect of manipulation on the design is described.
3 Manipulate textiles to produce work sample	3.1 Manipulation techniques are applied to a variety of textiles. 3.2 Process is analysed to assess outcome. 3.3 Manipulation is modified as required. 3.4 Work sample of manipulated textile is produced. 3.5 <i>OH&S practices</i> and procedures are implemented in manipulation of fabrics. 3.6 Techniques used to manipulate textiles and their effects are documented for future reference.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Types of fabric manipulation may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• crushing• heat application• tucking• pleating• shrinking• dyeing
Textiles may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• knitted fabrics, including weft knits and warp knits• woven fabrics, including plain, twill, satin, dobby and jacquard• non-woven fabrics such as felts, nets, braids and bonded• raw materials• yarns• man-made materials
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• manual handling techniques• standard operating procedures• personal protective equipment• safe materials handling• taking of rest breaks• ergonomic arrangement of workplaces• following marked walkways• safe storage of equipment• housekeeping• reporting accidents and incidents• other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• identify textile fibres and fabrics• determine effects of manipulating textiles• apply techniques to achieve manipulation effects• apply OH&S practices in work operations
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• organising work• completing tasks• identifying improvements

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • uses and performance characteristics of fibres and fabrics • information resources on fibres and fabrics • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • analyse performance characteristics • use tools and equipment associated with manipulating fabrics • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records • communicate within the workplace • sequence operations • meet specifications • clarify and check task-related information • carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Effect to be achieved through textile manipulation and its impact on the design is described.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Information on fibres and fabrics is collected and analysed to determine the effect on the textile following manipulation.	3
Plan and organise activities	Manipulation is planned for appropriate stage of the production sequence.	2
Work with others and in teams	Textile manipulation is described for other to conduct.	2
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Results of manipulation are compared to expected results.	2
Solve problems	Criteria are applied to determine the effect on the textile after manipulation.	3
Use technology	Manipulation tools and techniques are used.	3

LMTFD5006A Evaluate fashion designs against set criteria

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to evaluate fashion designs against set criteria.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to evaluation techniques applied to ensure a design meets specifications and client needs.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS

PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

1 Identify evaluation criteria	<p>1.1 Specifications and design brief are sourced and interpreted.</p> <p>1.2 Purpose of design and characteristics of target market are identified.</p> <p>1.3 Current industry design trends are researched and identified.</p> <p>1.4 Workplace and industry standards in relation to design presentation are researched and identified.</p> <p>1.5 Quality criteria that apply to design processes are researched and identified.</p> <p>1.6 Evaluation criteria are identified.</p>
2 Apply evaluation criteria	<p>2.1 Finished design is evaluated against original design concept.</p> <p>2.2 The design and its individual features are evaluated against client brief to check consistency.</p> <p>2.4 The design is evaluated to identify how well design principles have been applied.</p> <p>2.5 The design is evaluated for consistency with current industry trends and influences.</p> <p>2.6 The design is evaluated to ensure commercial appeal and viability.</p> <p>2.7 The design is evaluated for quality and innovative elements.</p> <p>2.8 Suggestions are made for adjustments to design to increase its ability to meet criteria.</p>
3 Suggest design improvements	<p>3.1 Technical design skills are used to reflect evaluation outcomes and communicate improvements.</p> <p>3.2 Potential design improvements are identified and tested for viability.</p>

- 3.3 Selection, adaptation and introduction of materials, tools, technology and production processes is applied to design improvements.
- 3.4 Compliance with intellectual and copyright requirements is observed when incorporating ideas from others.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Evaluation criteria may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• how the design:<ul style="list-style-type: none">• achieves design brief• meets budget• meets timeline• meets client needs• meets workplace and industry standards• is suitable for end use and target market• is suitable for current fashion design trends and expectations
Technical skills include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• sketching/drawing techniques, including shading• use of different media• use of line, form and colour• the degree of realism/abstraction• including other features• using information technology and software programs
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• manual handling techniques• standard operating procedures• personal protective equipment• safe materials handling• taking of rest breaks• ergonomic arrangement of workplaces• following marked walkways• safe storage of equipment• housekeeping• reporting accidents and incidents• other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• research and access relevant information from a range of sources• critically evaluate designs against a client brief, design concept and specifications
------------------------------	---

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • evaluate designs so they reflect current industry trends, commercial considerations, client briefs, innovation in design and quality considerations
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • quality standards that apply to design processes • history and theory of design in relation to fashion design • current fashion industry design trends • accepted ways and associated techniques of communicating ideas on the fashion industry, including sketches, diagrams, illustrations, photographs, etc. • ways of presenting fashion concepts, including written descriptions and rationale, samples of fabrics and production specifications, charts, diagrams and data sheets • contents of client brief • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • apply evaluation criteria to design • communicate in the fashion industry, including through use of design techniques such as sketching, drawing, painting and software manipulation • identify client needs and preferences • use numeracy skills to the level required to interpret budget and costing of designs • use reflective listening skills • carry out research • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material

- maintain accurate records
- communicate within the workplace
- sequence operations
- meet specifications
- clarify and check task-related information
- carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Design techniques such as sketching, drawing, painting and software manipulation are used to communicate design ideas.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Current industry design trends are researched and identified.	2
Plan and organise activities	Evaluation criteria are prioritised and applied against design outcomes.	3
Work with others and in teams	Suggestions are made for adjustments to design to increase commercial appeal and client satisfaction.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	The design is evaluated to ensure commercial appeal and viability.	2
Solve problems	Areas of potential improvement for designs to meet set criteria are identified and suggested.	3
Use technology	Selection, adaptation and introduction of materials, tools and technology is applied to design processes.	3

LMTFD5007A Analyse influences on contemporary fashion designs

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to research and analyse significant influences that determine current individual preferences and future directions in contemporary fashion.
Prerequisites	LMTFD4014A Identify influences on contemporary fashion designs and construction techniques
Application	<p>The unit applies to the analysis of the fashion theories on adoption and dissemination of new trends, as well as investigating fashion cycles. The role of media in the adoption and dissemination of fashion, specifically through the latter part of the 20th century and into the new millennium, is also covered. The skills covered in this unit will be applied in the development of designs to meet specific design briefs and current market demands.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology
ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Identify <i>significant influences</i> on contemporary fashion	1.1 Significant influences on contemporary fashion are investigated. 1.2 Role of influences on contemporary fashion preferences is identified.
2 Review theories of fashion adoption and dissemination	2.1 <i>Current theories</i> of fashion adoption and dissemination are identified. 2.2 Changes in fashion cycles within contemporary fashion scene are identified and future cycles predicted. 2.3 A current fashion trend is researched and its theory of fashion adoption is identified.
3 Analyse role of 21st century media on fashion adoption and dissemination	3.1 <i>Media</i> available in 21st century are identified. 3.2 Role of media in process of adoption and dissemination is identified. 3.3 A current fashion trend is researched, with role of a specified media type on its adoption and dissemination analysed.
4 Identify how future directions in fashion are predicted	4.1 <i>Purposes of fashion forecasting</i> are identified. 4.2 Processes of predicting future fashion directions are identified and compared. 4.3 Possible future trend is identified and illustrations are provided with evidence to support its possible adoption.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Significant influences may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• social• economic• gender and sexuality• demographics• age• politics• aspirations• environment• work
Current theories may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• trickle-down effect• trickle-up effect – street fashion
Media may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• print – newspapers, magazines, books, photographs• electronic – film, television, video, internet
Fashion cycles may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• fads• trends• classics
Purpose of fashion forecasting could include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• to assist designers in planning for next season• economic – for buyers to know what will sell• to enable textile mills to plan production
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• manual handling techniques• standard operating procedures• personal protective equipment• safe materials handling• taking of rest breaks• ergonomic arrangement of workplaces• following marked walkways• safe storage of equipment• housekeeping• reporting accidents and incidents• other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> investigate and present information on a current fashion trend relating to its theory of fashion adoption investigate and present information on the role of at least one media type and its influence on the adoption and dissemination of a current fashion trend investigate and present information on a possible future trend convey all necessary information in appropriate manner apply OH&S practices in work operations maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> organising work completing tasks identifying improvements using workplace practices using OH&S practices recording and reporting accidents and incidents assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> style features fashion influences sequence of operations OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures quality practices workplace practices recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> develop research strategies use computers at a basic level read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material maintain accurate records

- communicate within the workplace
- sequence operations
- meet specifications
- clarify and check task-related information
- carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

1 – Perform tasks effectively

2 – Manage tasks

3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Fashion trends are conveyed through use of collage and visual display tools.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Sources of information are collected and organised into a resource book documenting ideas.	3
Plan and organise activities	Process of identifying future trends is planned in advance.	2
Work with others and in teams	Ideas are communicated to others in the team and their feedback is sought.	2
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Statistics are used to identify trends.	2
Solve problems	Creative imagery is used to convey complex ideas.	3
Use technology	Computer generated images are used to support visual presentation.	2

LMTFD5008A Conduct fashion design purchasing

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to research and purchase fashion products for use in the development of fashion designs.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to the research of national or international fashion themes and styles, location of fashion design outlets and purchasing of products to use in the development of designs and fashion directions. Purchases may be to inspire new designs or assist in demonstrating ideas to meet a client design brief.</p> <p>Purchasing skills covered by this unit include the ability to identify emerging styles and themes, recognise development opportunities and select designs according to the design needs of a product range or label. Purchasing is conducted on overseas location with a requirement to research and locate fashion design outlets and suppliers.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology
ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Clarify purchasing objectives	1.1 Criteria for selecting design purchases are established. 1.2 Client or enterprise <i>design needs and interests</i> are identified. 1.3 Purchasing budget is confirmed. 1.4 Purchasing destination is established.
2 Prepare for purchasing trip	2.1 National or international trends are researched. 2.2 Fashion design outlets and suppliers are identified. 2.3 Preliminary purchasing itinerary is planned. 2.4 International monetary system, language and purchasing practices are identified where relevant.
3 Purchase designs	3.1 Themes, styles and trends are researched and tested during purchasing trips. 3.2 Purchasing outlets and suppliers are confirmed and located. 3.3 Production and supply opportunities are assessed. 3.4 Purchases are made to meet purchasing objectives. 3.5 Design opportunities outside of set objectives are identified and acted upon.

- | | |
|----------------------------|--|
| 4 Present design purchases | 4.1 Purchases are prepared for presentation to client or appropriate enterprise personnel. |
| | 4.2 Storyboards and inspiration boards are developed to convey themes and design concepts. |
| | 4.3 Purchases are presented to encourage adoption of ideas and concepts for further development. |
| 5 Maintain records | 5.1 Findings and outcomes of purchasing trips are documented. |

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Design needs and interests may include

- fabric style
- colours
- themes
- season range
- target market
- emerging trends
- cost points
- ability to be replicated
- appropriateness for design label

OH&S practices

OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:

- manual handling techniques
- standard operating procedures
- personal protective equipment
- safe materials handling
- taking of rest breaks
- ergonomic arrangement of workplaces
- following marked walkways
- safe storage of equipment
- housekeeping
- reporting accidents and incidents
- other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence

Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:

- identify and locate fashion outlets
- identify design themes and trends
- make cost-effective purchases
- conduct active research
- present purchasing findings

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • liaise with industry contacts • maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • principles and concepts of design • characteristics of target market • enterprise purchasing procedures and criteria • research tools for locating fashion outlets • relevant OH&S legislation, regulatory requirements and codes of practice • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • interpret and use data from a range of sources • make purchasing decisions • communicate effectively with others in Australia and overseas • conduct active research • recognise design opportunities • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records • communicate within the workplace • sequence operations • meet specifications • clarify and check task-related information • carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Positive and effective communication is established with suppliers.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Information relating to fashion outlet locations is accessed and used.	3
Plan and organise activities	Purchasing criteria are identified and prioritised.	3
Work with others and in teams	Suppliers are used to assist in the identification of design trends.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Foreign exchange rates are calculated.	3
Solve problems	Action research principles are applied to test and update design ideas.	3
Use technology	Electronic communications tools are used to research and locate fashion designs.	3

LMTFD5009A Cost design production

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to cost products for volume production within the fashion design industry.
Prerequisites	LMTFD4004A Calculate cost estimates for fashion products
Application	<p>The unit applies to costing products within the fashion design industry, while deciding on the most cost-effective mechanism for the production to occur. In-house, cut, make and trim (CMT) and offshore production must be investigated and competency in costing all three production options must be achieved. All work to be costed will be carried out according to workplace practices and procedures applying at the point of production.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology
ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Identify available <i>production options</i>	1.1 Different production options are identified. 1.2 Features of production options are identified
2 Identify costs associated with each production option	2.1 Cost benefits of each option are identified and compared. 2.2 Cost negatives of each option are identified and compared. 2.3 Previous production records are reviewed and appropriate personnel are consulted, to determine costing efficiency of production options. 2.4 Variables which impact on design production costs are identified. 2.5 OH&S practices are considered in costing.
3 Identify industry standards for design production	3.1 Target market for end products in design production is identified. 3.2 Differences between short-run or design production and large scale volume production are identified and compared. 3.3 Quality industry standards for design production are identified.
4 Develop costing sheets to industry standards	4.1 Costing sheet is completed for an in-house design production run. 4.2 Costing sheet is completed for a cut, make and trim production run. 4.3 Costing sheet is completed for an offshore production run. 4.4 Costing sheets are used to compare and select most appropriate design production option. 4.5 Quality standards of work and received materials are assessed.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Production options may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• in-house production• cut, make and trim suppliers• offshore production
Costs may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• freight• tariffs/duties• wastage• wages or labour• materials• equipment usage and maintenance
Cost benefits may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• reduced wastage• greater control over production schedule• reduced overheads• flexible use of labour• cheaper labour• greater flexibility
Cost negatives may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• high overheads• freight/shipping• lack of quality control• longer lead times• larger minimum orders
Variables may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• labour availability• availability of materials and equipment• transportation reliability• exchange rate changes• complexity of design production
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• manual handling techniques• standard operating procedures• personal protective equipment• safe materials handling• taking of rest breaks• ergonomic arrangement of workplaces• following marked walkways• safe storage of equipment• housekeeping• reporting accidents and incidents• other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

Differences may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • quality control • style/design features • choice of fabrics • using of linings • choice of trims • extras, e.g. pleating, embroidery • costs • machinery and equipment requirements
-------------------------	--

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • assess and complete all required information on costing sheet <p>complete at least three different costing sheets for three different design production options</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • apply all quality criteria in completion of costing sheet • apply OH&S practices in work operations • maintain accurate records • accurately draw trade sketches of a range of garments as detailed in the design brief or specifications • accurately label sketches with appropriate notes relating to construction and design features
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	<p>Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.</p>
Context for assessment	<p>Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.</p>
Interdependent assessment	<p>This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.</p>
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • structure of costing sheets • industry standards for costing specifications • patternmaking and design terminology • style features

- quality standards
- sequence of operations
- OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures
- quality practices
- workplace practices
- recording and reporting practices

Underpinning skills

Demonstrates skills to:

- draw trade sketches and drawings
- access industry standards
- calculate and compare costs
- read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material
- maintain accurate records
- communicate within the workplace
- sequence operations
- meet specifications
- clarify and check task-related information
- carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

1 – Perform tasks effectively

2 – Manage tasks

3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Accurate costing sheets are completed to direct fashion production.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Detailed information is gathered and recorded to ensure all required information is included on costing sheet.	3
Plan and organise activities	All information is accessed and prepared for the completion of costing sheet.	3
Work with others and in teams	Colleagues and other professionals are consulted to ensure costings are appropriate.	2
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Mathematical concepts are used in the development of costing sheets.	3
Solve problems	Design details are provided to support the production procedures within a specific enterprise.	3
Use technology	Computers and calculators are used to determine accurate costings.	3

LMTFD5010A Develop and present design concepts within specific guidelines

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge for the development and presentation of fashion design concepts to the client within specified guidelines.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit covers design development and presentation conducted as a member of a team or under supervision. Design concept development processes will be conducted according to workplace practices and procedures.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Interpret design brief	<p>1.1 Design brief is reviewed and <i>details</i> checked to ensure correct interpretation.</p> <p>1.2 <i>Parameters of the project</i> are established.</p> <p>1.3 Roles of design team members are clarified.</p>
2 Research fashion design trends	<p>2.1 Fashion design trends are researched and <i>relevant information</i> relating to design project is obtained, including availability of materials.</p> <p>2.2 Workplace practices and previous projects are identified and assessed for relevance to project.</p>
3 Generate and select initial concepts	<p>3.1 Concepts are developed to identify range of possibilities.</p> <p>3.2 Range of storyboard themes is prepared related to fabrics and colours.</p> <p>3.3 Ideas are discussed and modified in consultation with other design team members.</p> <p>3.4 Appropriate concepts are selected for development in consultation with design team.</p>

- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| 4 | Develop design concepts | 4.1 Appropriate styles and trims or accessories are identified.
4.2 Production feasibility is researched and confirmed.
4.3 Artwork/drawings/specifications are prepared in appropriate format, including any additional documentation required.
4.4 Design concepts are prepared for presentation according to agreed presentation strategy. |
| 5 | Cost designs in conjunction with production area | 5.1 All items and resources required for the designs are checked and confirmed.
5.2 Accumulated time is calculated to ascertain labour cost.
5.3 Material costs are obtained from relevant sources and compared, where necessary.
5.4 Total design costs are calculated, which include labour, material and overhead cost estimates.
5.5 Amendments or modifications to design are negotiated and agreed upon as required to ensure design is within budget. |
| 6 | Present designs | 6.1 Features and benefits of designs are presented in a manner that encourages acceptance.
6.2 Client or workplace brief requirements are addressed in the presentation.
6.3 Records are maintained and stored and documentation completed. |

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

- | | |
|---|---|
| Relevant information may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• customer requirements• work specifications• fashion reports, trade journals, etc.• stock records• summaries of materials, labour and overhead costs• organisation work procedures• organisational or external personnel• quality and Australian Standards and procedures |
| Details of the design brief may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• target market• end uses of product• cost point• production requirements• timelines• client requirements• workplace requirements• quality requirements• style, feature requirements |

Parameters of the project may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• team members• chain of command• timelines• budget constraints• reporting processes
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• manual handling techniques• standard operating procedures• personal protective equipment• safe materials handling• taking of rest breaks• ergonomic arrangement of workplaces• following marked walkways• safe storage of equipment• housekeeping• reporting accidents and incidents• other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• research trends and other relevant information• develop/select concepts and storyboard themes• prepare artwork/drawings/specifications• present design concepts• calculate costs• communicate effectively with design team, customers, etc.• apply OH&S practices in work operations• maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• organising work• completing tasks• identifying improvements• using workplace practices• using OH&S practices• recording and reporting accidents and incidents• assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes• recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions• completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment

Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• the elements and principles of design and how they are used to create good design in the fashion industry• the industry, global and local trends and detailed knowledge of garment construction• range of typical garment fabrics, including weight and other characteristics• marker making and cutting procedures• research sources• colour/colour mix and interpretation• fabrics, fibres, trims, accessories and their properties and characteristics• proposals, the detail required and issues associated with terms and conditions• costing processes• relevant OH&S legislation, regulatory requirements, copyright obligations and codes of practice• OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures• quality practices• workplace practices• recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• effectively develop and present design concepts within prescribed guidelines• generate ideas• produce sketches manually or using CAD systems• compile information• cost a range of garment• communicate effectively with individuals, work groups and supervisors• select, interpret and apply procedures and processes• prepare and present reports and information in appropriate formats• read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material• maintain accurate records• communicate within the workplace• sequence operations• meet specifications• clarify and check task-related information• carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Design ideas are presented to team members for consideration.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Relevant information is accessed and used to guide design process.	3
Plan and organise activities	Design ideas are tested and developed for presentation.	3
Work with others and in teams	Team cooperation and collaboration is central to design development processes.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Costs of design production are calculated.	3
Solve problems	Design concepts are compared to design brief to check consistency.	3
Use technology	CAD tools are used to develop design concepts.	3

LMTFD5011A Produce fashion illustrations

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to produce fashion illustrations to visually communicate the fashion figure in a variety of poses and silhouettes.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to producing fashion illustrations to visually communicate the fashion figure in a variety of poses and silhouettes using stylised drawing and rendering techniques.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Prepare work area	1.1 Workbench and seating are set up according to <i>OH&S practices</i> . 1.2 <i>Drawing tools and equipment</i> are selected and prepared.
2 Select reference source	2.1 <i>Reference source</i> appropriate to illustration requirements is selected. 2.2 Reference source is collaged to assist in illustration process. 2.3 Compositional balance, scale and perspective are analysed. 2.4 <i>Figure details</i> are analysed.
3 Select appropriate techniques for fashion illustration	3.1 A variety of <i>illustration techniques</i> are identified for use in presenting fashion illustration. 3.2 Appropriate media are selected. 3.3 Techniques to be used are selected. 3.4 Illustration techniques and media selected are analysed for appropriateness in communicating a variety of <i>fabrics</i> and textures.
4 Produce fashion illustration	4.1 Proportion, scale and stylisation relevant to fashion illustration are selected. 4.2 Clean, confident and stylised lines are used in presenting representation of fashion figure. 4.3 A variety of silhouettes and poses are illustrated. 4.4 Illustration of clothed fashion figure is produced.
5 Complete documentation	5.1 Illustration is inspected against quality standards. 5.2 Any changes or adjustments to sketch are carried out as required.

5.3 Documentation relating to fashion illustration is completed and stored.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• manual handling techniques• standard operating procedures• personal protective equipment• safe materials handling• taking of rest breaks• ergonomic arrangement of workplaces• following marked walkways• safe storage of equipment• housekeeping• reporting accidents and incidents• other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise
Drawing tools and equipment include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• coloured pencils• aquarelle pencils• pencil sharpener• felt tip markers• pen• ink• pastel• crayon• flat paint• washed paint• air brush• eraser• ruler• slanted drawing table
Reference source may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• photograph• magazines• fashion books
Figure details may include	<p>Full or partial body drawings including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• hands• feet• head• hair• eyes• nose

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • mouth • waist • bust • hips • legs • arms
Illustration techniques may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • flat paint application • wash (paint application) • rendering • air brushing
Fabrics may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • fur • velvet • suede • silk • sheer fabrics • denim • brocade • sequin • leather • lace

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • prepare workstation, tools and equipment • analyse reference source • select appropriate illustration techniques • produce fashion illustration • communicate effectively with design team, management, production, clients etc. • maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment

Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	Demonstrates knowledge of: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• elements and principles of design• fabrics and textiles• research sources• colour/colour mix and interpretation• relevant OH&S legislation• OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures• quality practices• workplace practices• recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	Demonstrates skills to: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• produce illustrations manually or using CAD systems• communicate effectively with individuals, work groups and management• document and transfer information• work within strict timeframes• draw shapes• attend to detail• read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material• maintain accurate records• sequence operations• meet specifications• clarify and check task-related information• carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Fashion illustration documentation is completed.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Research is conducted to guide the fashion illustration process.	3
Plan and organise activities	Set up and produce illustration following a process.	3

Work with others and in teams	Collaborative relationships are developed to facilitate the accomplishment of work goals.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Scale and proportions are determined for illustration.	3
Solve problems	Inaccurate representations of body features are identified.	3
Use technology	Equipment and tools are used effectively.	3

LMTFD5012A Perform contour draping

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to perform contour draping for styled garments that are worn against the body.
Prerequisites	LMTFD4021A Drape fabrics to make patterns
Application	<p>The unit applies to draping fabric to the contours of the figure incorporating working design drawings. Draping may be for a one-off garment that goes from drape to garment or a prototype that goes from drape to flat pattern for small volume production. Draping is performed on a body form such as a mannequin or model.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology
ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Prepare draping tools and equipment	<p>1.1 Work area is set up according to <i>OH&S practices</i> and specifications for work.</p> <p>1.2 <i>Draping tools and equipment</i> are selected and prepared.</p>
2 Prepare designworking drawings	<p>2.1 <i>Design</i> lines are identified and plotted on body form, using narrow tape.</p> <p>2.2 Measurements are checked against specifications.</p>
3 Prepare fabric for draping	<p>3.1 Dimensions of <i>fabric</i> pieces required for drape are estimated according to chosen design.</p> <p>3.2 Warp weft and bias of fabric are identified.</p> <p>3.3 <i>Fabric handling qualities</i> are identified.</p>
4 Plan drape	<p>4.1 Requirements for adding wearing ease for movement are identified.</p> <p>4.2 Requirements of manipulating dart excess are identified.</p> <p>4.3 Seam positioning is planned.</p> <p>4.4 <i>Drape plan</i> is developed.</p> <p>4.5 Cover designs requiring a fitted foundation to support volume draping or layering are prepared.</p>
5 Perform draping for contoured designs	<p>5.1 Fabric is pinned on model form relating reference points and fabric grains.</p> <p>5.2 Fabric is moulded and manipulated on model form according to working drawing, fit and design lines.</p>

	5.3 Ease is added to allow for movement. 5.4 Fullness or volume is incorporated into draping if required. 5.5 Fabric is smoothed and manipulated over contours of model form and along design lines. 5.6 Darts and seams are formed and pinned for pattern creation or garment construction. 5.7 Drape is prepared for truing. 5.8 Truing is performed
6 Finalise draping	6.1 Drape is removed from model form. 6.2 Drape is finalised and directed to next production process.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual handling techniques • standard operating procedures • personal protective equipment • safe materials handling • taking of rest breaks • ergonomic arrangement of workplaces • following marked walkways • safe storage of equipment • housekeeping • reporting accidents and incidents • other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise
----------------	---

Draping tools and equipment may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • model form • narrow tape • tape measure • pen/pencil • scissors • rule • marker pens • hole punch • pins • triangle square • French curve • pattern notcher • weights
Working drawing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • design lines as depicted in the fashion sketch that are then transferred onto the model form using narrow tape

Fabric must be	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> the fabric of the final garment or a fabric that has the same handle or drape
Fabric handling qualities may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> fall stretch stability drape
Drape plan may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> adding fullness (pleats, tucks, gathers) multiple darts/division of darts symmetric and/or asymmetric design features cowls, twists, knots
EVIDENCE GUIDE The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.	
Critical aspects of evidence	Demonstrates skills and knowledge to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> prepare tools, equipment and fabric pieces prepare working drawing develop a draping plan carry out draping on model form finalise the drape for next process
Consistency in performance	Consistently applies skills and knowledge when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> organising work completing tasks identifying improvements using workplace practices using OH&S practices recording and reporting accidents and incidents assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	Demonstrates knowledge of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> principles and concepts of patternmaking customer and workplace requirements cost efficiency in relation to patternmaking range of typical garment fabrics, including weight and other characteristics marker making procedures cutting and garment construction

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • consistently achieve quality and production output requirements • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records • communicate within the workplace • sequence operations • meet specifications • clarify and check task-related information • carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
 2 – Manage tasks
 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Drape is transferred to paper.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Draping information is transferred accurately to pattern.	3
Plan and organise activities	Plan and prepare model form for draping.	3
Work with others and in teams	Work with designer and product development team to perform drape.	2
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Ease, seam allowance and darts are determined during draping.	3
Solve problems	Truing of drape.	3
Use technology	Tools and equipment are used efficiently.	2

LMTFD5013A Develop merchandising plans for fashion products

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to develop merchandising plans for fashion products.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to merchandising activities involving the presentation, sale and promotion of fashion design products. It applies to merchandising of high-volume and low-volume fashion products and accessories to the appropriate market sectors.</p> <p>Development of merchandising plans may be central to the work role or completed as part of the overall sale of design concepts to clients. Plans may incorporate merchandising practices such as just in time systems, point of sale documentation and communication systems, overnight replenishment and sale tracking systems, according to the practices of the workplace and merchandising outlet. All proposed merchandising activities must be appropriate to the price point of the fashion design and the overall objectives of the client.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS

- 1 Analyse merchandising opportunities

PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

- 1.1 Features of fashion design are analysed to identify promotional strengths.
- 1.2 Target market is researched and buying patterns in relation to fashion design are identified.
- 1.3 Distribution outlets for fashion designs and their product range, location, target market and merchandising activities are analysed.
- 1.4 **Current merchandising practices** and trends are analysed for relevance to fashion product.
- 1.5 Merchandising budget for fashion design is identified.
- 2.1 Client position and range of fashion products in marketplace are identified.
- 2.2 Merchandising objectives and sales targets are established with client.
- 2.3 Product pricing strategy and position in market are established.
- 2.4 Distribution requirements of fashion design are established.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 3 Determine in-store presentation of fashion design | 3.1 Store layout, display spaces and customer flow are analysed.
3.2 Fixtures, fittings and mannequins are selected for display of fashion designs as appropriate to store and the design.
3.3 Presentation visuals and arrangements are determined for optimal display of fashion design products.
3.4 Folding and packaging requirements are determined.
3.5 Information to assist sales staff in selling fashion designs is identified and prepared.
3.6 Timing of release to store and customers is determined.
3.7 Documentation of sales records is established to monitor effectiveness of merchandising activities.
3.8 Pricing policies and procedures are identified. |
| 4 Determine advertising and promotion of fashion design | 4.1 Promotional activities are selected to support sales of fashion design.
4.2 Promotional and advertising materials appropriate to fashion design product and client marketing objectives are determined.
4.3 Photography and visual representations are arranged as required.
4.4 Responses to promotional and advertising activities are assessed for effectiveness.
4.5 Marketing plan is presented to and discussed with client. |
| 5 Develop and present merchandising plan | 5.1 A merchandising plan is developed which details presentation, promotional and advertising activities.
5.2 Merchandising plan is assessed for effectiveness in meeting marketing objectives, timing and budget requirements.
5.3 Merchandising plan is presented to and discussed with client.
5.4 Client response is received and integrated into further proposals. |
| 6 Document merchandising plan | 6.1 Merchandising plan is documented according to industry practices .
6.2 Reports on merchandising opportunities and strategies are documented and presented to relevant persons in the workplace, as appropriate. |

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

- | | |
|---|---|
| Current merchandising practices may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• point of sale tracking• instant communication of sales back to manufacturers• overnight replenishment• just in time systems |
| Presentation visuals and arrangements may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• colour and theme arrangements• pricing, sizing, styles arrangements• total look or accessory arrangements• placement of stock on fixtures, fittings and mannequins• use of additional props• location within the store• signage |

Pricing policies and procedures may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • marking down of slow moving stock • soiled or damaged goods • goods close to use-by date • end of season stock • long-term and short-term • internal and external considerations • pricing policies • goods and services tax (GST) requirements
Promotional and advertising materials may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • brochures, fliers, posters • photos • labels, tickets • print, audio visual or electronic advertisements
Promotional activities may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • gimmicks • point of sale incentives • special offers • price reductions • advertising • product branding activities • packaging features such as labelling • demonstrations • fashion parades
Industry practices may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • formatting and structure • inclusion of pictures and presentation details • promotion of design features and benefits • reporting verbally or in writing • oral, written or visual communication • inclusion of merchandising objectives • inclusion of adequate detail
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual handling techniques • standard operating procedures • personal protective equipment • safe materials handling • taking of rest breaks • ergonomic arrangement of workplaces • following marked walkways • safe storage of equipment • housekeeping • reporting accidents and incidents • other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	Demonstrates skills and knowledge to: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• identify appropriate presentation, promotion and advertising for specific fashion design• address merchandising objectives• appeal to target market• coordinate options and activities to overall merchandising plan• document merchandising plan
Consistency in performance	Consistently applies skills and knowledge when: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• organising work• completing tasks• identifying improvements• using workplace practices• using OH&S practices• recording and reporting accidents and incidents• assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes• recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions• completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	Demonstrates knowledge of: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• research tools and strategies• merchandising practices in the fashion industry• concepts of product and pricing life cycle• international regulations, pricing structures, import/export factors, production times, quality assurance factors and production arrangements (where appropriate)• relevant OH&S legislation, regulatory requirements and codes of practice• characteristics and purchasing styles of target market• characteristics and purpose of merchandising• the role of merchandising in the retail industry• range and availability of merchandising products and services• customer demand and market trends• product quality standards• pricing procedures• goods and services tax (GST) requirements• OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control

	measures
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • access, interpret and use data from a range of sources • make recommendations • select merchandising procedures or processes • prepare and present reports and information in appropriate formats • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records • communicate within the workplace • sequence operations • meet specifications • clarify and check task-related information • carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
 2 – Manage tasks
 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Merchandising plans are documented comprehensively and in a manner that promotes acceptance.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Research information is gathered and used to guide and justify plans.	3
Plan and organise activities	Activities are selected and sequenced to meet promotional objectives for fashion design.	3
Work with others and in teams	Sales staff are used to assist in the development of in store presentation of designs.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Costings are calculated for activities.	3
Solve problems	Merchandising options are selected to achieve optimal effectiveness in meeting budget and timing constraints.	3
Use technology	Merchandising options are illustrated using appropriate software programs.	3

LMTFD5014A Construct complex blocks for fashion garments

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to construct complex blocks to be used for patterns of fashion garments with advanced styling requirements.
Prerequisites	LMTFD4008A Construct stock size block for garment to meet size and fit specifications
Application	<p>The unit applies to the construction of blocks for pattern development of fashion garments that require advanced styling such as label house, couture, designer label, made-to-measure, bridal or corsetry production.</p> <p>Work conducted requires discretion and judgment.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Analyse <i>garment range</i> composition	<p>1.1 Garments in range are confirmed.</p> <p>1.2 Design sketches and drawings and specifications are interpreted and clarified with designer as required.</p> <p>1.3 Intended purpose of design is established.</p> <p>1.4 Profile of target market is obtained.</p> <p>1.5 Designs are evaluated and recorded in relation to specification of fit model, body movement and comfort.</p> <p>1.6 Fabric characteristics and performance, trims and finishing are considered in relation to the design</p>
2 Construct the block	<p>2.1 Blocks are selected for fashion garments.</p> <p>2.2 Block drafting principles and methods are selected for block construction.</p> <p>2.3 Measurements and characteristics of fit model are analysed and entered into block drafting formulas and methodology.</p> <p>2.4 Block is constructed using patternmaking technical skills and checked to ensure compliance with requirements, design specifications and standards.</p> <p>2.5 Methods and formulas used are documented</p>

- | | |
|--|--|
| 3 Verify blocks for accuracy and suitability | 3.1 Block is checked either manually, by computer or by constructing a toile.
3.2 Where required, toiles are constructed from block.
3.3 Correct proportion, fit and balance and suitability of garment is verified and where required, minor adjustments are made.
3.4 Final blocks are completed, labelled and checked for accuracy and completeness to ensure compliance with specifications |
| 4 Develop block portfolio for fashion label | 4.1 Blocks are presented in preparation for development of style patterns according to workplace requirements.
4.2 Blocks are stored on appropriate <i>media</i> .
4.3 Blocks are filed and stored |
| 5 Maintain records | 5.1 Records are maintained and reports prepared, where necessary |

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Garment range may include

- tailored suits
- eveningwear
- bridalwear
- couture
- stretch trousers
- corsetry
- raglans
- kimonos
- overcoats
- jackets
- capes

Profile may include

- age
- ethnicity
- gender
- size, body characteristics
- economic and social expectations

Measurement and characteristics of fit model must include

- accurate assessment of body measurement positions (landmark points such as nape and levels such as waist level)
- accurate taking of body measurements, including girth, vertical and horizontal measurements
- age
- sex
- ethnicity
- assessment of physical characteristics, including body characteristics and unique features as aligned with standard representation

Patternmaking technical skills may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • motor and drawing skills • calculation and accuracy abilities • interpreting and presentation skills • dart manipulation • contouring
Methods and formulas may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • deviations from standard patterns • sources of pattern components • pattern derivation methods and formulas • block construction methods and formulas • application of current industry practice
Media may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • cardboard • computer file • tissue paper
Filed may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • filing by date, category (shirts, top), label, location, gender and age
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual handling techniques • standard operating procedures • personal protective equipment • safe materials handling • taking of rest breaks • ergonomic arrangement of workplaces • following marked walkways • safe storage of equipment • housekeeping • reporting accidents and incidents • other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • interpret designs for label garment range • understand measurement and characteristics of fit model • construct and check blocks • verify blocks • develop and adjust toiles (where required) • develop block portfolio • communicate effectively with design team, customers, etc. • apply OH&S practices in work operations • maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• identifying improvements• using workplace practices• using OH&S practices• recording and reporting accidents and incidents• assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes• recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions• completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	Demonstrates knowledge of: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• principles and concepts of block construction• block construction processes• size standards• industry, global and local trends• detailed knowledge of garment construction• range of garment fabrics• cost efficiency in relation to block construction and patternmaking• OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures• quality practices• workplace practices• recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	Demonstrates skills to: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• develop blocks with consideration to characteristics of fabric and trimmings• construct garment toiles or prototypes• develop final blocks and recommend alternative construction methods• use manual or CAD systems• compile information• communicate effectively with individuals, work groups and supervisors• select, interpret and apply procedures, processes and motor skills• prepare and present reports and information in appropriate formats• consistently achieve quality and production output requirements• read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material• maintain accurate records• sequence operations• meet specifications• clarify and check task-related information• carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Label garment range is discussed with the designer.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Fit model measurements are interpreted and body characteristics analysed to ensure that the chosen model does not deviate too far from normal posture and proportion alignments.	3
Plan and organise activities	Work bench is set up and prepared for block construction.	3
Work with others and in teams	Designer and quality assurance officer are assisted in preparing the specification document.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Formulas for block construction are derived from measurements.	3
Solve problems	Constructed blocks are tested for accuracy and adjustments made as required.	3
Use technology	Appropriate machines or equipment are used for block construction and verification.	3

LMTFD5015A Develop patterns for complex fashion garments

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to develop patterns for use in the production of complex fashion garments with advanced styling requirements.
Prerequisites	LMTFD4015A Create pattern from block to meet customer specifications
Application	<p>The unit applies to the development of patterns for complex fashion garments with advanced styling requirements using an existing block and applying principles of patternmaking. Complex fashion garments covered by this unit include garments that require advanced styling such as label house, couture, designer label, made-to-measure, bridal or corsetry production.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology
ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Prepare pattern workstation	<p>1.1 Workstation and seating are set up according to OH&S practices and specifications for work.</p> <p>1.2 Patternmaking tools and equipment are selected and prepared.</p> <p>1.3 Any additional materials and equipment required to perform task are collected.</p> <p>1.4 Patternmaking tools, equipment and supplies are laid out.</p>
2 Analyse garment range	<p>2.1 Garments in range are confirmed.</p> <p>2.2 Design sketches or drawings and specifications are interpreted and clarified with designer as required.</p> <p>2.3 Intended purpose of design is established.</p> <p>2.4 Profile of target market is obtained.</p> <p>2.5 Designs are evaluated and recorded in relation to specification of fit model, body movement and comfort.</p>
3 Analyse fabrics for garment range	<p>3.1 Fabric characteristics and performance, trims and finishing are considered in relation to the design.</p> <p>3.2 Any fabrics assessed as not suitable for the design are reported to designer.</p> <p>3.3 Budget constraints for fashion label range are considered.</p>

4 Select and assess block portfolio	4.1 Pattern production for the design is planned. 4.2 Appropriate block portfolio is determined. 4.3 Blocks for block portfolio are selected and retrieved from storage. 4.4 Blocks are checked for accuracy and appropriateness.
5 Create pattern	5.1 Ease for comfort and appropriateness is calculated in achieving design outcomes. 5.2 Advanced dart manipulation is performed as required. 5.3 Necessary adjustments are made to seams to create silhouette to match design brief. 5.4 Pattern is produced using advanced patternmaking principles . 5.5 Methods and formulas used are documented. 5.6 Pattern pieces are checked for accuracy of seam allowances, seam match, hems and functional openings. 5.7 Pattern pieces are labelled and markings completed.
6 Prepare sample pattern	6.1 Toile or prototype is constructed as appropriate in stages or as a complete garment. 6.2 Toile or prototype is examined and assessed in consultation with designer. 6.3 Pattern problems or faults are identified. 6.4 Pattern is altered or adjusted as required to meet design requirements. 6.5 Pattern is finalised and checked to ensure accuracy, completeness and compliance to design requirements.
7 Develop pattern portfolio	7.1 Patterns are prepared for product development and sampling. 7.2 Specification documents are prepared as required. 7.3 Patterns are stored and filed and stored.
8 Maintain records	8.1 Records are maintained and reports prepared, where necessary.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual handling techniques • standard operating procedures • personal protective equipment • safe materials handling • taking of rest breaks • ergonomic arrangement of workplaces • following marked walkways • safe storage of equipment • housekeeping • reporting accidents and incidents • other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise
----------------	---

Patternmaking tools and equipment may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • scissors • square rule • marker pens • hole punch • pins • fashion triangle • French curve • pattern notcher • weights • tape measure
Garment range may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • tailored suits • eveningwear • bridal wear • couture • trousers • pants • suits • corsetry
Profile may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • age • ethnicity • gender • size • body characteristics • economic and social expectations
Advanced dart manipulation may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • moving darts from shoulder seam into armhole, side seam and hem, etc. as required to achieve design outcome
Advanced patternmaking principles include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • pivoting • square blocking • contouring
Methods and formulas may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • deviations from standard patterns • sources of pattern components • pattern derivation methods and formulas • block construction methods and formulas • application of current industry practice
Markings include	<p>appropriate seam allowance</p> <p>notching</p> <p>pattern information (size, style number, cutting instructions and identity)</p> <p>darts</p> <p>drill holes</p> <p>grain line</p> <p>cutting line</p> <p>stitching line</p>

Specification documents may include	<p>information containing some or all of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • number of pattern pieces • what the pattern consists of (e.g. 2 bodice, 1 sleeve) • measurement table • size table • technical drawing • details of types of materials (fabric, lining, fusing, elastic, closures and trims) • sign-off • recommendations for stitching
EVIDENCE GUIDE <p>The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.</p>	
Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • interpret designs for garment range • analyse fabric for designs • choose appropriate block portfolio to suit work specifications • create, check and test patterns • create toile or prototype • communicate effectively with design team, customers, etc. • apply OH&S practices in work operations • develop pattern portfolio • maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • principles and concepts of patternmaking • customer and workplace fit requirements • cost efficiency in relation to patternmaking • range of typical garment fabrics, including weight and other characteristics • marker making procedures

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • cutting and garment construction • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • consistently achieve quality and production output requirements • undertake a range of activities associated with creating patterns • develop patterns with consideration to the characteristics of fabric and trimmings • construct garment toiles • test pattern and recommend alternative construction methods • use manual or CAD systems • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records • communicate within the workplace • sequence operations • meet specifications • clarify and check task-related information • carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

1 – Perform tasks effectively

2 – Manage tasks

3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Specification documents and pattern are completed for garment range.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Specifications and measurements are obtained and interpreted to guide development of patterns.	3
Plan and organise activities	Toile or prototype is made to test pattern and ensure design outcomes are achieved.	3
Work with others and in teams	Designs are clarified with designer as required.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Measurements are recorded accurately with ease and seam allowance added.	3
Solve problems	Patterns are tested for fit and adjustments made where required.	3
Use technology	Machines and equipment are used to produce patterns.	3

LMTFD5016A Grade shaped patterns

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to conduct allometric grading of shaped or 3D patterns for fashion garments.
Prerequisites	LMTFD4013A Grade 2D patterns
Application	<p>The unit applies to the allometric grading of 3D or shaped patterns for garments where the focus is on taking into account differences in body growth for a specialised fit. Allometric grading must consider the relative growth rate of different parts of the body.</p> <p>Discretion and judgement are required, for both self and others, in planning and selecting processes, procedures or outcomes.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Analyse size of market	1.1 Market is researched for averages and differences. 1.2 Body growth of target market is analysed. 1.3 Data of target market is collected for measurement table. 1.4 Appropriate base size is selected. 1.5 Appropriate grading methodology is selected.
2 Develop a shaped grade plan	2.1 Design brief and specifications are interpreted. 2.2 Target market and intended purpose of design is discussed and clarified with designer. 2.3 Measurement table is analysed. 2.4 Growth of circumference and length increments is identified and size table is constructed. 2.5 Base pattern pieces are identified. 2.6 Grade points are allocated. 2.7 Grade rule table is constructed.
3 Grade pattern	3.1 Stacking or outlay requirements, including direction are determined. 3.2 Pattern is graded manually using patternmaking technical skills or by computer, according to OH&S practices .

- 3.3 If stacking, stack points or lines are identified.
- 3.4 Integrity of ***pattern attributes*** is preserved during grading.
- 3.5 All pattern pieces are accurately labelled with all necessary ***pattern marking symbols***.
- 3.6 Pattern is checked for accuracy and appropriate action taken, if necessary.
- 4 Prepare portfolio
 - 4.1 Shaped patterns and markers are prepared and presented in preparation for production.
 - 4.2 Specification documents are prepared as required.
- 5 Maintain records
 - 5.1 Records are maintained and documentation completed.
 - 5.2 Patterns are filed.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Body growth is | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the change in shape and/or increase in dimension of the neck, torso and limbs which is independent of growth in stature |
| Grading methodology must include | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • allometric or 3D apportion of grade increments • positioning of constant or stack point through growth areas of body |
| Shaped grading is | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • a construction-based method of grading that reduces or grows a base pattern in height, girth and shape and distributes grade increments at points and in values that reflect a third dimension to a flat 2D pattern |
| OH&S practices | <p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual handling techniques • standard operating procedures • personal protective equipment • safe materials handling • taking of rest breaks • ergonomic arrangement of workplaces • following marked walkways • safe storage of equipment • housekeeping • reporting accidents and incidents • other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise |
| Pattern attributes may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • darts • notches • shape • design proportion |
| Pattern marking symbols may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • grain lines • darts • all necessary slits • job seams |

- seam allowance
- correct written information and instructions

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • analyse market • grade shaped patterns • ensure graded patterns meet specifications • construct grade rule table • prepare and present pattern portfolio • communicate effectively with design team, customers, etc. • apply OH&S practices in work operations • maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Australian size standards • workplace and customer size charts • patternmaking and the development of a pattern • cost-efficiency in patternmaking • marker making • allometric grading concepts • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	Demonstrates skills to:

- produce precise results
- use CAD or manual grading systems
- communicate effectively with individuals, work groups and supervisors
- document and transfer information
- consistently achieve quality and production output requirements
- read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material
- maintain accurate records
- sequence operations
- meet specifications
- clarify and check task-related information
- carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

1 – Perform tasks effectively

2 – Manage tasks

3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Grading requirements for production of garment are clarified with the designer.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Base pattern information is obtained and analysed against design specifications.	3
Plan and organise activities	Sequence for grading is determined.	3
Work with others and in teams	Information is clarified with designer and production team.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Grading increments are accurately determined.	3
Solve problems	Inaccurate patterns are rectified.	3
Use technology	Appropriate machines and equipment are used efficiently.	3

LMTFD5017A Apply design studio processes to meet client brief

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to apply design studio processes when working to a client brief to design and produce fashion garments.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit requires integration of skills across the design process and focuses on the production of a fashion design to meet a client brief.</p> <p>Studio processes are to be applied in an iterative manner to accommodate experimentation and continuous improvement in order to achieve desired design effects.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS

PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

1 Confirm design brief	<p>Client needs and objectives are discussed and clarified with client.</p> <p>Purposes of design, final product and end user expectations are identified.</p> <p>Parameters and design criteria are established and agreed upon.</p> <p><i>Specifications</i> of design brief are confirmed.</p> <p>Communication requirements and channels are agreed upon.</p>
2 Research information to guide design process	<p>2.1 Relevant information is identified and accessed to guide design and production process.</p> <p>2.2 Characteristics of target market are identified.</p> <p>2.3 Relevant products previously developed by the enterprise are identified and reviewed in terms of range, style, construction, price points.</p> <p>2.4 Information is analysed and applied to design concept development and production.</p> <p>2.5 Any additional expertise required for project is identified.</p> <p>2.6 Information sources on design techniques and processes used to achieve desired effects, are accessed and used as required throughout design and development processes.</p>
3 Develop and refine design concept	<p>3.1 Preliminary concept options are identified and discussed with client or workplace design team.</p> <p>3.2 Options are evaluated against design brief specifications.</p>

4 Experiment with design concepts	3.3 Principles and elements of design are applied to design concepts.
	3.4 Criterion and selection processes are used to refine concept options.
	4.1 Preliminary concepts are scoped out using sketches, illustrations, models, samples, fibres and fabrics.
	4.2 Evaluation of design concepts is conducted by self and others using selected criteria and processes.
	4.3 Feedback and analysis is assessed for potential to improve design concept.
5 Present design concept to client	4.4 Further experimentation is used to develop design concepts.
	4.5 Design concepts are selected for presentation to client.
	5.1 Communication tools are used to present design concept to client.
	5.2 Features and benefits of design concepts are presented to client.
	5.3 Presentation skills are used to promote acceptance of design concept.
6 Scope production requirements	5.4 Client response is assessed and considered.
	5.5 Design concept is modified and improved where possible.
	6.1 All components required for production are identified.
	6.2 Technical aspects of production are identified.
	6.3 Specification sheet is completed to guide production.
7 Develop design pattern	6.4 Resources and production requirements are identified and sourced.
	6.5 Production plan is developed to guide production.
	6.6 Plan is discussed and confirmed with client.
	7.1 Pattern base is selected to meet design brief.
	7.2 Pattern base is modified to create patterns that meet design requirements and specifications.
8 Produce fashion product	7.3 Pattern is made according to industry standards, including industry markings and lay plans.
	7.4 Toile is created to test accuracy of pattern and design effect.
	7.5 Pattern is confirmed against design specifications.
	8.1 Workplace is prepared according to OH&S practices .
	8.2 Materials and resources are prepared.
9 Evaluate and analyse design and production processes	8.3 Fabric is cut according to pattern directions.
	8.4 Product is sewn according to specifications.
	8.5 Product is finished according to specifications.
	9.1 Finished item is assessed against design specifications and design brief.
	9.2 Design result is analysed and evaluated to identify opportunities for improvement and required changes to design or production techniques.
10 Present finished product to client	9.3 Production process is evaluated to identify opportunities for improvement.
	9.4 Process and improvements are documented.
	10.1 Finished product is prepared for presentation to client.
	10.2 Accessories, fabric examples and components are selected to convey range and style options of design.
	10.3 Model is selected as required.
	10.4 Finished product is presented to client.
	10.5 Client response is received and assessed for improvement opportunities.
	10.6 Product is assessed for further production opportunities.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Specifications may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • budget • cost/price points • type of garment/s • style requirements • fit model specifications • size range • timeline • design restrictions or conditions
Characteristics of target market may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • age • gender • size, body characteristics • economic and social expectations • purchase pattern
Relevant information may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • trends • fabrics • production and construction processes • target market • resource availability • costs
Selection processes may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • checking against design brief • discussing with client • testing with target market • testing with production team • discussing with patternmaker • testing with sales and marketing professionals
Communication tools may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • inspiration board • storyboard • research information • multimedia tools • print and audio tools • demonstration or exhibition
Presentation skills may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • effective verbal and non-verbal communication • active listening • use of appropriate communication tools • positive language • clear statement of main points • interpersonal communication skills

Others may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• supervisor• trainer/mentor• designers• patternmakers• production supervisors
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• manual handling techniques• standard operating procedures• personal protective equipment• safe materials handling• taking of rest breaks• ergonomic arrangement of workplaces• following marked walkways• safe storage of equipment• housekeeping• reporting accidents and incidents• other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• integrate skills to complete design and production process• interpret and respond to a client brief• experiment with and assess design development processes and outcomes• implement iterative and continuous improvement processes• work with client• develop designs• produce fashion product• apply OH&S practices in work operations• maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• organising work• completing tasks• identifying improvements• using workplace practices• using OH&S practices• recording and reporting accidents and incidents• assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes• recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions• completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment

Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• client needs and processes• the elements and principles of design and how they are used to create good design in the fashion industry• information sources and requirements for design and production• garment construction• research sources• fabrics, fibres, trims, accessories and their properties and characteristics• relevant OH&S legislation and codes of practice• OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures• quality practices• workplace practices• recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• apply principles and elements of design• apply iterative experimentation and improvement processes• communicate and promote design concepts• review and assess processes and procedures• document and transfer information• read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material• maintain accurate records• communicate within the workplace• sequence operations• meet specifications• clarify and check task-related information• carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Design concepts are communicated for feedback and review.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Research is conducted to guide and inform the design process.	3
Plan and organise activities	Production processes are planned to meet design requirements.	3
Work with others and in teams	Information is accessed to assist design development and production.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Design specifications are used to create patterns.	2
Solve problems	Iterative processes are used to develop and improve design concepts.	3
Use technology	Production tools and equipment are used effectively to produce desired outcome.	3

LMTFD5018A Determine and specify advanced construction processes

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to determine and specify advanced construction processes to achieve desired design details.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit covers being able to identify design details used in the production of garments for the purpose of achieving specific effects such as embellishing fabric to give a garment a more unique, individual appearance. It also covers the development of construction specifications and standard operating procedures to guide the production of garments which incorporate design detail.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Determine design details	1.1 <i>Design details</i> are identified and clarified. 1.2 Garment is enhanced by using design details. 1.3 Positions of design details on garment are identified.
2 Develop design detail specifications	2.1 Artwork/drawings/specifications are prepared in appropriate format, including any additional documentation required. 2.2 <i>Advanced garment construction processes</i> are identified and planned. 2.3 <i>Machine or equipment</i> requirements are determined.
3 Plan advanced construction process	3.1 Plan for advanced construction process is developed. 3.2 Garment construction plan is documented.
4 Produce sample design detail	4.1 Appropriate fabric and components are selected. 4.2 Advanced construction processes are undertaken according to <i>OH&S practices</i> and checked to ensure design detail is achieved. 4.3 Sample is evaluated for desired results. 4.4 Modifications are made to plan and sample as required.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 5 Present advanced construction process plan | 5.1 Process plan is discussed with team to ensure all requirements are understood.
5.2 Tasks are appropriately assigned according to available expertise and production requirements.
5.3 Information relating to standard operating procedures, constraints, preferred processes, designs and advance construction process is conveyed to team.
5.4 Design specification sheet, drawings, samples and patterns are presented and analysed with team.
5.5 Relevant technical, monitoring and reporting procedures are established. |
| 6 Maintain records | 6.1 Records are maintained and reports prepared, where necessary.
6.2 Records are filed and stored. |

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

- | | |
|---|--|
| Design details may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • printing • dyeing • fraying • cutting fabric on bias • painting • beading • embroidery |
| Advanced garment construction processes may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • cut-in and applied pockets and tabs • contoured and layered insets • intricate closures and seaming • requirements of unique fabrics and components • quilting • drawn thread work • appliqué • rouleau |
| Machine/equipment may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • a full range of machines required to complete design detail which may include a combination of the following: plain lockstitch sewing machine, a three, four or five thread overlocker, a zigzag sewing machine, blind hemmers, buttonholers, button sewers, pocket and collaring machines, elasticators and binders • printing and stencilling equipment • hoops • hand sewing and machine accessories and attachments |
| OH&S practices | <p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual handling techniques |

- standard operating procedures
- personal protective equipment
- safe materials handling
- taking of rest breaks
- ergonomic arrangement of workplaces
- following marked walkways
- safe storage of equipment
- housekeeping
- reporting accidents and incidents
- other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • identify design details • identify process to achieve design details • identify advanced garment construction processes • identify quality standards • develop standard operating procedure • communicate effectively with construction team, customers, etc. • apply OH&S practices in work operations • maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	<p>Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.</p>
Context for assessment	<p>Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.</p>
Interdependent assessment	<p>This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.</p>
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • garment construction • garment fabrics and components • relevant OH&S legislation, regulatory requirements and copyright obligations and codes of practice • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• quality practices• workplace practices• recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	Demonstrates skills to: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• compile information• select, interpret and apply procedures, processes and motor skills• prepare and present reports and information in appropriate formats• consistently achieve quality and production output requirements• communicate effectively with individuals, work groups and supervisors• read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material• maintain accurate records• sequence operations• meet specifications• clarify and check task-related information• carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Construction methods are communicated with production team.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Quality standards are identified and assessed to assist with final outcome.	3
Plan and organise activities	Construction of design details is determined.	3
Work with others and in teams	Process constructions requirements are communicated with appropriate personnel.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Materials and components for detail are calculated.	3
Solve problems	Construction faults are identified and rectified.	3
Use technology	Appropriate machines or equipment are used.	3

LMTFD5019A Analyse individual fit and make pattern alterations

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to analyse the fit of a garment or toile on the individual body, making necessary adjustments and altering the pattern.
Prerequisites	LMTFD4010A Create pattern to meet design specifications applying advanced patternmaking principles
Application	<p>The unit applies to fitting a garment or toile on an individual and making size and fit alterations on the garment or toile; then transferring these alterations to the pattern.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology
ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Assess body characteristics	<p>1.1 Individual body characteristics and unique features are identified and assessed for potential problems in fit.</p> <p>1.2 Information on individual body characteristics is recorded.</p>
2 Fit garment or toile on individual	<p>2.1 Garment or toile is put on the individual.</p> <p>2.2 Comfort and fit is discussed with individual.</p> <p>2.3 Necessary adjustments to garment or toile are made.</p> <p>2.4 Agreement is reached on adjustments with individual.</p> <p>2.5 Work schedule is developed with individual for future and final fittings.</p>
3 Make pattern alterations	<p>3.1 Tools and equipment are obtained and prepared for altering patterns.</p> <p>3.2 Required alterations are recorded.</p> <p>3.3 Garment or toile alterations are transferred to the pattern.</p> <p>3.4 Pattern alterations are finalised.</p> <p>3.5 Final patterns are completed, labelled and checked for accuracy and completeness of all necessary information, to ensure compliance with specifications.</p> <p>3.6 Patterns are filed and stored.</p>

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Body characteristics may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • genetic, developmental and structural influences • shape classifications such as hourglass, rectangular, pear, inverted triangle • anthropometric classifications – somatotypes • shoulder slope – raised, normal, sloping • body sway and postural asymmetry – according to lower and upper body • proportions – short or long waisted, mid-body shortness
Unique features may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • common postural faults such as forward head, rounding of shoulders, anterior/ posterior pelvic tilts, sway back, flat back • prominent features such as protruding abdomen, bust or seat • spinal and pelvic rotation • foot alignment such as supinated or pronated foot • arm types such as very thin or heavy • leg types such as bow legs or knock knees • neck length such as long or short
Tools and equipment may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual or electronic tape measure • image capturing devices • pen/pencil • measure chart • tape, cord or elastic • eraser • Australian Standard Chart
Pattern alterations may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • skirt: length, circumference/width, waist & hips, full high hips, sway back, large bottom, flat bottom, high rounded stomach, prominent hip bones • bodice: length, circumference/width, waist, bust darts, shoulders, bottle neck, chest, bust, back • basic fitted dress • sleeve: length, circumference/width • pants: length, circumference/width, waist and hips, full high hips, sway back, large bottom, flat bottom, high rounded stomach/prominent hip bones, high rounded stomach • related alterations: full stomach/thick front waist, one high hip, pronounced rounded back/hollow chest
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual handling techniques • standard operating procedures

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • personal protective equipment • safe materials handling • taking of rest breaks • ergonomic arrangement of workplaces • following marked walkways • safe storage of equipment • housekeeping • reporting accidents and incidents • other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise
EVIDENCE GUIDE <p>The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.</p>	
Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • analyse individual fit • analyse and assess physical characteristics • identify and complete required alterations • record alterations
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	<p>Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.</p>
Context for assessment	<p>Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.</p>
Interdependent assessment	<p>This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.</p>
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • patternmaking principles and practices • sizing and fitting practices • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • analyse figure types and take measurements • communicate effectively with fit model or client

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • interpret and apply defined procedures and motor skills • consistently achieve quality and production output requirements • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records • communicate within the workplace • sequence operations • meet specifications • clarify and check task-related information • carry out work according to OH&S practices
--	---

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Garment fit and suitability for individual is analysed.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Alterations are recorded on specification sheet.	3
Plan and organise activities	Fittings are scheduled.	2
Work with others and in teams	Fit adjustment requirements are discussed and negotiated with individual customer to reach agreed outcome on fit.	2
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Alterations are transferred to pattern accurately.	3
Solve problems	Desired fit is achieved for individual.	3
Use technology	Electronic means are used for calculations.	2

LMTFD6001A Evaluate commercial viability of designs

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to evaluate the commercial viability of the mass production and sale of fashion designs.
Prerequisites	LMTFD5009A Cost design production
Application	<p>The unit applies to evaluating the ability of fashion design concepts and proposals to assist in achieving business goals and financial targets. Skills covered by this unit are used to assist in the making decisions about which fashion designs to select for commercial production and sale.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology
ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Review business position	1.1 Current business plan is analysed. 1.2 Business objectives and financial targets are identified. 1.3 Current business practices are identified and relevance for future developments is determined. 1.4 Past products are identified and records of commercial success analysed. 1.5 Workplace criteria for measuring commercial success of products are identified.
2 Analyse fashion designs	2.1 Ability of designs to meet client or target market needs and expectations is identified. 2.2 Costing and production strategies of designs are analysed. 2.3 Alignment of designs to business goals and practices is assessed.
3 Apply selection criteria to fashion designs	3.1 Workplace criteria for selection of designs are identified. 3.2 Designs are analysed against selection criteria. 3.3 Senior management are consulted in selection of designs. 3.4 Designs are selected for commercial production.
4 Establish evaluation mechanisms	4.1 Financial targets for design production are established. 4.2 Monitoring systems are implemented to measure progress of design production and return. 4.3 Design selection is evaluated against commercial targets.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Current business practices may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• use of in-house; cut, make and trim; offshore production suppliers• use of expertise external to organisation• development of organisational image and market position• pricing and budget strategies• marketing and sales strategies
Criteria may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• potential financial return• alignment with business goals and corporate image• client acceptance• availability of materials and resources for production• suitability of production processes• marketing potential• place in the market and product life cycle• production costs and timelines
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• manual handling techniques• standard operating procedures• personal protective equipment• safe materials handling• taking of rest breaks• ergonomic arrangement of workplaces• following marked walkways• safe storage of equipment• housekeeping• reporting accidents and incidents• other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• complete and assess production costing information• analyse designs against selection criteria• analyse business goals and strategies• apply OH&S practices in work operations• maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• organising work

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • practices and procedures for costing of design production • industry trends and market practices • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • interpret costing and financial documentation • access industry standards • analyse business information • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records • communicate within the workplace • sequence operations • meet specifications • clarify and check task-related information • carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Opinions on design selection are discussed with senior management.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Detailed financial information is gathered and used to inform selection processes.	3
Plan and organise activities	Business objectives and priorities are identified and used to guide selection processes.	3
Work with others and in teams	Colleagues and other professionals are consulted to ensure all costings are appropriate.	2
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Financial data is analysed and calculated to identify budget estimate for design production.	3
Solve problems	Industry and market trends that may affect commercial success of designs are identified and taken into consideration when selecting designs for production.	3
Use technology	Computers and calculators are used to determine and analyse financial information.	3

LMTFD6002A Manage product development of fashion designs

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to manage the development and production processes for fashion designs.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to the development of fashion designs to production and completion of final product. This unit requires extensive skill and knowledge in fashion design development, patternmaking and construction techniques.</p> <p>High-level judgement is required in planning and selecting appropriate processes or procedures for self and others.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Establish design production plan	<p>1.1 Information about previous design production is reviewed and relevance for current activities assessed.</p> <p>1.2 Business goals and strategies and organisation systems for production of designs are reviewed and relevance for current activities assessed.</p> <p>1.3 Design requirements, timelines and budget are identified and confirmed.</p> <p>1.4 Quality standards are identified.</p> <p>1.5 Key personnel are consulted to assist in production plan development, as required.</p> <p>1.6 Planning techniques and tools are used to develop production plan and schedule which includes critical path, timeline and key outcomes.</p>
2 Select and brief project team	<p>2.1 Key personnel are selected to conduct development activities.</p> <p>2.2 Production plan is discussed with team to ensure all requirements are understood.</p> <p>2.3 Tasks are assigned according to available expertise and production requirements.</p> <p>2.4 Information relating to standards, constraints, preferred processes, designs and techniques is conveyed to team.</p> <p>2.5 Design specification sheet, drawings, samples and patterns are presented and analysed with team.</p> <p>2.6 Relevant technical, monitoring and reporting procedures are established.</p>

- | | |
|--|---|
| 3 Monitor progress | 3.1 Ongoing communication with team members is maintained to ensure obligations, quality, timelines, budget and technical constraints are met. |
| | 3.2 Any problems or revisions are reviewed or prepared. |
| | 3.3 Quality assurance practices are conducted to check pattern, sizing, materials and construction comply with design specifications. |
| | 3.4 Changes to design specifications are communicated with designer and patternmaker and documented. |
| | 3.5 Production activities are monitored to ensure compliance with <i>OH&S practices</i> . |
| 4 Facilitate process or work flow problem resolution | 4.1 Methods to solve process or work flow problems are identified through facilitation of meetings or discussions. |
| | 4.2 Knowledge of process improvement and efficient production techniques/systems are used to assist in systematic identification and resolution of process or work flow problems. |
| | 4.3 Preferred option to resolve problem is recommended and documented. |
| | 4.4 Implementation of recommended problem resolution option is facilitated. |
| 5 Monitor production improvements/ variations | 5.1 Improvements/variations to production are monitored to ensure outcome meets specifications and production schedule. |
| | 5.2 Data is collated and analysed to evaluate effectiveness of production improvements or variations. |
| | 5.3 Decisions on improvements or variations to production are made within limits of management responsibility. |
| 6 Evaluate final product | 6.1 Information on development process is assembled and evaluated. |
| | 6.2 Product outcome is assessed against specifications. |
| | 6.3 Significant results are identified, in consultation with others as necessary, and used to draft plans for future action. |
| | 6.4 Production outcomes are discussed with project team to review strengths and weaknesses of process. |
| 7 Cost outcome | 7.1 Development costs are monitored. |
| | 7.2 Actual costs are compared to budget estimates and inconsistencies identified and explained. |
| | 7.3 Impact of costing inconsistencies is considered for effect on product sale cost. |
| 8 Maintain records | 8.1 Production and monitoring records are maintained and reports prepared, where necessary. |
| | 8.2 Pattern and design production processes and findings are documented. |
| | 8.3 Presentations on production performance and developments are made at management meetings. |

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Organisation systems may include

- JIT
- VAM

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • quick response • quality systems • team processes • benchmarking
Design requirements may include:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • expertise • human resources • materials and equipment • specifications
Key personnel may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • senior management • production supervisors • patternmakers • fashion designers • production personnel • contractors
Planning techniques and tools may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Scheduling, time management, brainstorming, setting goals and defined outcomes, prioritising, review and evaluation strategies
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual handling techniques • standard operating procedures • personal protective equipment • safe materials handling • taking of rest breaks • ergonomic arrangement of workplaces • following marked walkways • safe storage of equipment • housekeeping • reporting accidents and incidents • other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • select and plan processes for production from fashion designs • ensure production meets efficiency standards • check compliance with specified requirements • communicate effectively with team members • deal with inefficiencies • monitor production changes • monitor application of OH&S practices in production operations • maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• identifying improvements• using workplace practices• using OH&S practices• recording and reporting accidents and incidents• assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes• recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions• completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	Demonstrates knowledge of: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• patternmaking principles and processes• fashion design principles and processes• planning tools and procedures• production control and efficiency processes• quality assurance processes• production processes• relevant OH&S legislation, regulatory requirements and codes of practice• OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures• quality practices• workplace practices• recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	Demonstrates skills to: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• interpret and use data from a range of sources• make decisions• solve problems• prioritise• communicate effectively with team members• select, interpret and apply procedures or processes• prepare and present reports and information in appropriate formats• read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material• maintain accurate records• communicate within the workplace• sequence operations• meet specifications• clarify and check task-related information• carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Production requirements are communicated to team members.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Production requirements are identified and analysed to guide development of production plans and schedules.	3
Plan and organise activities	Production tasks are allocated to team members.	3
Work with others and in teams	Ongoing communication is maintained with team members to assist in production efficiency.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Production monitoring data is analysed for compliance.	3
Solve problems	Production problems are identified and addressed.	3
Use technology	Production planning tools and software are used to coordinate production activity.	3

LMTFD6003A Manage fashion design process

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to develop fashion design briefs and manage the development of design concepts for commercial production.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to skills associated with guiding the development of fashion product designs to meet client and business goals and strategies. Work may be applied for own processes or to direct activities of others.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Conduct fashion design research	1.1 Global fashion trends are researched and emerging themes identified. 1.2 Product range and previous designs developed by the business are reviewed to assess relevance to current design directions. 1.3 Business and client goals are identified and related to design objectives. 1.4 Production capacity and processes of business are identified. 1.5 Research is conducted on target market, materials, designs, processes and marketing materials according to the needs of the design.
2 Determine key criteria for design brief	2.1 Business goals and quality standards for designs are identified. 2.2 Target market and intended uses of fashion designs are determined. 2.3 Design themes and style requirements of design are determined. 2.4 Budget, cost points and timing constraints are identified. 2.5 Requirements for use of fabrics, materials, suppliers and production processes are determined. 2.6 Client requirements are confirmed with client, as appropriate.
3 Confirm design brief	3.1 Design brief is developed which clearly conveys all guidelines for development of design concepts. 3.2 Appropriate personnel are consulted with to confirm feasibility and appropriateness of design brief. 3.3 Sketches, drawings and samples are used to illustrate design requirements, as appropriate. 3.4 Design brief is finalised.

4 Specify design processes	4.1 <i>Design concept development processes</i> are specified where appropriate.
	4.2 Required involvement of patternmakers, designers, design assistants and production personnel is identified.
	4.3 Communication requirements for development of fashion designs are specified.
	4.4 Monitoring procedures and checking points are determined.
	4.5 Design development personnel are selected and briefed.
5 Implement design processes	5.1 Design personnel are selected and briefed to develop design concepts.
	5.2 Development of design concepts is monitored to ensure budget and time constraints are met.
	5.3 Problems or inconsistencies in design concept development are identified and addressed.
	5.4 Design concepts are received for evaluation.
6 Evaluate design development processes	6.1 Design concepts are evaluated against design brief.
	6.2 Modifications and suggestions for improvements are made.
	6.3 Design concept is selected for further development.
	6.4 Agreement on design concept is confirmed with client.
	6.5 Design development processes are evaluated to assess their effectiveness in achieving design brief.
7 Complete documentation	7.1 Design brief, development processes and outcomes are documented.
	7.2 Documentation is filed and stored.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Design concept development processes may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• purchasing trips• storyboards• inspiration boards• research• teamwork• event participation• attendance at fashion shows• experimentation with fabrics, materials, designs, etc.• draping• use of models for original creation, or adaptation of designs or interpretation of sketches within contexts related to single or multiple production styles and ranges, made-to-measure and theatre costuming
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• manual handling techniques• standard operating procedures• personal protective equipment

- safe materials handling
- taking of rest breaks
- ergonomic arrangement of workplaces
- following marked walkways
- safe storage of equipment
- housekeeping
- reporting accidents and incidents
- other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • establish requirements for design briefs • prioritise design requirements • identify/define problems • deal with non-conformance/inefficiencies • confirm design criteria • communicate effectively with design team, production departments, clients, etc. • apply OH&S practices in work operations • maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	<p>Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.</p>
Context for assessment	<p>Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.</p>
Interdependent assessment	<p>This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.</p>
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • elements and principles of design and how they are used to create good design in the fashion industry • the industry, global and local trends in fashion and garment design • garment construction techniques and processes • detailed knowledge of a range of fabrics

- research sources
- design concept development techniques and processes
- expertise of personnel
- proposals, the detail required and issues associated with terms and conditions
- relevant OH&S legislation, regulatory requirements and copyright obligations and codes of practice
- OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures
- quality practices
- workplace practices
- recording and reporting practices

Underpinning skills

Demonstrates skills to:

- plan processes
- encourage interchange of ideas/designs
- facilitate development of design concepts
- assess/evaluate design process
- cost process/outcome
- communicate effectively within the workplace, including liaising with other departments
- determine report requirements and present information in appropriate formats
- read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material
- maintain accurate records
- sequence operations
- meet specifications
- clarify and check task-related information
- carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

1 – Perform tasks effectively

2 – Manage tasks

3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Design brief is communicated with clients or relevant personnel.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Specifications for design brief are researched and prioritised.	3
Plan and organise activities	Design development process is determined and organised.	3
Work with others and in teams	Ongoing contact is maintained with the design development team to support process outcomes.	3

Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Budget targets for designs are estimated.	2
Solve problems	Design team is briefed clearly and comprehensively to avoid misinterpretation.	3
Use technology	Project documentation tools are used to monitor and record progress.	3

LMTFD6004A Manage advanced patternmaking processes

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to manage processes for patternmaking in high-volume production of complex or specialised garments.
Prerequisites	LMTFD5016A Grade shaped patterns
Application	<p>The unit applies to the development and implementation of patternmaking plans for complex or specialised production.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS

PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

1 Analyse patternmaking methodologies	<p>1.1 <i>Patternmaking methodologies</i> are identified.</p> <p>1.2 <i>Critical measurements</i> used in pattern derivation for unique body shapes, features and <i>specialised garments</i> are analysed.</p> <p>1.3 Industry applications of patternmaking methodologies are analysed.</p>
2 Develop plans	<p>2.1 Process for receiving design brief and specifications are identified.</p> <p>2.2 Design brief and specifications are received and interpreted.</p> <p>2.3 Patternmaking requirements and grading methodologies to be applied are determined.</p> <p>2.4 <i>Critical paths</i> are analysed.</p> <p>2.5 Patternmaking plan for implementation is developed and managed according to design requirements.</p>
3 Manage development of patterns	<p>3.1 Suitable blocks are selected or developed.</p> <p>3.2 <i>Suitable style patterns</i> are selected or developed for sampling and production.</p> <p>3.3 Grade plans for the range are selected or developed.</p> <p>3.4 Specifications for blocks, style patterns and grade plans are confirmed.</p> <p>3.5 Patterns are prepared and presented for implementation.</p>
4 Manage pattern process	<p>4.1 Patterns are assessed and confirmed for sampling and product development.</p> <p>4.2 Process is communicated with team members and tasks are delegated and scheduled.</p>

- 4.3 Implementation of plan is monitored and supervised to ensure production and quality meet required standards.
- 4.4 Production problems, faults and quality issues are identified and rectified.
- 4.5 Where required, changes and adjustments are made to patterns.
- 4.6 Sign off for patterns is identified and obtained.
- 4.7 Grades, markers and instructions for manufacture are completed or confirmed.
- 4.8 Implementation of ***OH&S practices*** is confirmed.
- 5 Maintain records
 - 5.1 Records are maintained and reports prepared, where necessary.
 - 5.2 All changes to patterns are documented and ***methods and formulas*** described.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

- | | |
|---|---|
| Specialised garments may include: | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• special purpose garments, e.g. wetsuits and corsetry• garments with advanced styling such as:<ul style="list-style-type: none">• tailored suit• eveningwear• bridal wear• couture• stretch trousers• corsetry• raglans• kimonos• overcoats• jackets• capes |
| Patternmaking methodologies may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• block methodologies (national and international)• computer technologies• pattern grading• flat and draped patternmaking methodologies• marker making |
| Critical measurements may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• those measurements that are relevant for block and style development and grading such as those taken or calculated on the body or garment |
| Critical paths may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• resource availability• timelines• achieving delivery• supply chain• skill levels• identifying constraints |

Suitable style patterns may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • budget constraints • production turnaround • logistics (shipping and distribution) • reporting • couture garments • suits • bridal wear • jackets • specialised garments (wet suits, corsetry)
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual handling techniques • standard operating procedures • personal protective equipment • safe materials handling • taking of rest breaks • ergonomic arrangement of workplaces • following marked walkways • safe storage of equipment • housekeeping • reporting accidents and incidents • other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise
Methods and formulas may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • deviations from standard patterns • sources of pattern components • pattern derivation methods and formulas • block construction methods and formulas • application of current industry practice

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • analyse patternmaking methodologies • implement patternmaking process • manage patternmaking process • prepare and present production plan for implementation • communicate effectively with design team, customers, etc. • implement plan for sampling and product development • apply OH&S practices in work operations • maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• using OH&S practices• recording and reporting accidents and incidents• assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes• recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions• completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	Demonstrates knowledge of: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Australian size standards• workplace and customer size charts• patternmaking and the development of a pattern• cost efficiency in patternmaking• marker making• relevant OH&S legislation and codes of practice• OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures• quality practices• workplace practices• recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	Demonstrates skills to: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• produce precise results• use CAD or manual grading systems• communicate effectively with individuals, work groups and supervisors• document and transfer information• consistently achieve quality and production output requirements• read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material• maintain accurate records• sequence operations• meet specifications• clarify and check task-related information• carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Implementation plan is communicated to team members and tasks delegated.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Production processes for the workplace are identified and analysed.	3
Plan and organise activities	Sequence for production is determined.	3
Work with others and in teams	Information is clarified with designer and production team.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Advanced style patterns are accurately developed.	3
Solve problems	Inaccurate patterns are rectified.	3
Use technology	Appropriate machines and equipment are used efficiently.	3

LMTFD6005A Drape structured over-garments

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to perform structured draping for tailored over-garments such as jackets and overcoats.
Prerequisites	LMTFD5012A Perform contour draping
Application	<p>The unit applies to draping fabric with special considerations to fit balance, and inter-construction requirements of the jacket as an over-garment. Included, is the use of partial flat pattern construction or blocks to complement the drape, such as with the development of sleeves and collars. Draping may be for a one off garment that goes from drape to garment or a prototype that goes from drape to flat pattern for small volume production. Draping is performed on a body form such as a mannequin or model.</p> <p>Work is supervised and may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology
ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Prepare draping tools and equipment	<p>1.1 Work area is set up according to <i>OH&S practices</i> and specifications for work.</p> <p>1.2 <i>Draping tools and equipment</i> are selected and prepared.</p> <p>1.3 Body form that is one size larger than actual size is selected.</p> <p>1.4 Body form is prepared by applying additional padding required of the design, e.g. shoulder pads.</p> <p>1.5 Body reference points are marked with tape on body form.</p>
2 Prepare working drawings	<p>2.1 <i>Design</i> lines are identified and plotted on body form using narrow tape.</p> <p>2.2 Working drawing is developed.</p> <p>2.2 Measurements are checked.</p>
3 Prepare fabric for draping	<p>3.1 Dimensions of <i>fabric</i> pieces required for drape are estimated according to chosen design.</p> <p>3.2 Warp, weft and bias grains of fabric are identified.</p> <p>3.3 <i>Fabric handling qualities</i> are identified.</p>
4 Plan drape	<p>4.1 Requirements for adding design ease for movement are identified.</p> <p>4.2 Requirements for manipulating dart excess are identified.</p> <p>4.3 Seam positioning is planned.</p> <p>4.4 <i>Drape plan</i> is developed.</p>

- | | |
|--------------------|---|
| 5 Perform draping | 5.1 Fabric is pinned on body form relating reference points and fabric grains.
5.2 Fabric is moulded and manipulated on body form according to the design, fit and design schematic.
5.3 Ease is added to allow for movement.
5.4 If a requirement of chosen design, fullness or volume is incorporated into draping.
5.5 Fabric is smoothed and manipulated over contours of over-garments and along sketch design lines.
5.6 Darts and seams are formed and pinned for pattern creation or garment construction.
5.7 Collars or built-up necklines are draped according to the design.
5.8 Cut-on or set-in sleeves are partially flat-constructed or designed then placed on the drape.
5.10 Reference points are pinned.
5.11 Sleeve design is incorporated into drape.
5.12 Front, back and sleeve drapes are prepared for truing.
5.13
5.14 Truing is performed |
| 6 Finalise draping | 6.1 Drape is removed from body form.
6.2 Drape is finalised and directed to next production process. |

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

OH&S practices

OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:

- manual handling techniques
- standard operating procedures
- personal protective equipment
- safe materials handling
- taking of rest breaks
- ergonomic arrangement of workplaces
- following marked walkways
- safe storage of equipment
- housekeeping
- reporting accidents and incidents
- other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

Draping tools and equipment may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • body form • narrow tape • shoulder pads • tape measure • pen/pencil
---	---

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • scissors • square rule • marker pens • hole punch • pins • fashion triangle • French curve • pattern notcher • weights
Design schematics are the	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • design lines as depicted in the fashion illustration that are then transferred onto the dress form using narrow tape
Structured over-garments must include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • jacket or overcoat with set-in or cut-on sleeve • collar • lining • creative and intricate styling
Structured over-garments may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • jackets/overcoats with set-in sleeves • jackets/overcoats with cut-on sleeves – such as raglans and kimonos • jackets/overcoats with volume-draped panels • jackets/overcoats with cut-on collars
Fabric must be	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the fabric of the final garment or a fabric that has the same handle or drape
Fabric handling qualities may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • fall • stretch • stability • drape
Drape plan may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • adding fullness (pleats, tucks, gathers) • multiple darts/division of darts • symmetric and/or asymmetric design features • cowls, twists, knots

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • prepare tools, equipment and fabric pieces • prepare design schematics • develop a draping plan • carry out the draping on the dress form • finalise the drape for next process
------------------------------	--

Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices
----------------------------	---

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• recording and reporting accidents and incidents• assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes• recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions• completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	Demonstrates knowledge of: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• principles and concepts of patternmaking• customer and workplace requirements• cost efficiency in relation to patternmaking• range of typical garment fabrics, including weight and other characteristics• flat pattern construction• cutting and garment construction• OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures• quality practices• workplace practices• recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	Demonstrates skills to: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• interpret design brief or specifications• interpret and apply defined procedures and motor skills• consistently achieve quality and production output requirements• read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material• maintain accurate records• communicate within the workplace• sequence operations• meet specifications• clarify and check task-related information• carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

1 – Perform tasks effectively

2 – Manage tasks

3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Drape is transferred to paper.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Draping information is transferred accurately to pattern.	3
Plan and organise activities	Body form is planned and prepared for draping.	2
Work with others and in teams	Work with designer and product development team to perform drape.	2
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Ease, seam allowance and darts are determined during draping.	2
Solve problems	Truing of drape.	3
Use technology	Tools and equipment are used efficiently.	2

LMTFD6006A Develop a fashion range

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to develop and present a fashion range to the client.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>This unit applies to design development and presentation of a fashion range based on an occasion, theme or storyline. Design concept development processes will be conducted according to workplace practices and procedures.</p> <p>The fashion range developed must consist of at least 10 garments.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS

PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

1 Interpret brief	<p>1.1 Fashion range development brief is reviewed and <i>details</i> checked to ensure correct interpretation.</p> <p>1.2 <i>Parameters of the project</i> are established.</p> <p>1.3 Roles of design team members are clarified.</p>
2 Research fashion range development procedures	<p>2.1 Fashion range trends are researched and <i>relevant information</i> relating to the project is obtained, including availability of materials.</p> <p>2.2 Styles, colours, stories or themes of fashion ranges are analysed.</p> <p>2.3 Fabric selection, availability and performance characteristics are analysed.</p> <p>2.4 <i>Supply chains</i> for range development are identified.</p>
3 Analyse target market	<p>3.1 Profile of target market population is obtained.</p> <p>3.2 <i>Demographics</i> of target market are identified.</p> <p>3.3 Intended <i>purpose of fashion range</i> is established.</p> <p>3.4 Current styles and fashion trends are analysed.</p>
4 Plan initial concepts for range development	<p>4.1 Concepts are developed to identify range of possibilities.</p> <p>4.2 A range of storyboard themes is prepared related to fabrics, theme, stories and colours.</p> <p>4.3 Fashion range <i>accessorising</i> is planned.</p> <p>4.4 Appropriate concepts are selected for development in consultation with</p>

	design team.
5 Develop fashion range	5.1 Appropriate styles, trims and accessories are identified for target market. 5.2 Production feasibility is researched and confirmed. 5.3 Artwork, drawings, specifications and samples are prepared in appropriate format, including any additional documentation required. 5.4 Fashion range concepts are prepared for presentation according to agreed presentation strategy.
6 Cost fashion range	6.1 All items and resources required for range are checked and confirmed. 6.2 Accumulated time is calculated to ascertain labour cost. 6.3 Material costs are obtained from relevant sources and compared, where necessary. 6.4 Total range costs are calculated, which include labour, materials and overhead cost estimates. 6.5 Amendments or modifications to range are negotiated and agreed upon as required to ensure design is within budget.
7 Present fashion range	7.1 Features and benefits of fashion range are presented in a manner that encourages acceptance. 7.2 Client or workplace brief requirements are addressed in the presentation.
8 Maintain records	8.1 Records of sample and range development, including details of style, construction, fabrics, patterns, costs and grading are produced. 8.2 Records are maintained and reports prepared, where necessary.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Details may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • target market • end uses of product • cost point • production requirements • timelines • client requirements • workplace requirements • quality requirements • style, feature requirements
Parameters of the project may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • team members • chain of command • timelines • budget constraints • reporting processes
Relevant information may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • customer requirements • work specifications • fashion reports, trade journals, etc.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • stock records • summaries of materials, labour and overhead costs • organisation work procedures • organisational or external personnel • quality and Australian Standards and procedures
Supply chains includes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the concept of product flow from raw material to production, distribution, marketing and sales
Demographics may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • age • ethnicity • gender
Purpose of fashion range may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • occasion • theme • style
Accessorising may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • hats • scarfs • jewellery • shoes • bags
OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • manual handling techniques • standard operating procedures • personal protective equipment • safe materials handling • taking of rest breaks • ergonomic arrangement of workplaces • following marked walkways • safe storage of equipment • housekeeping • reporting accidents and incidents • other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • research fashion range trends and other relevant information • develop/select concepts and storyboard themes • prepare artwork/drawings/specifications • present fashion range concepts • calculate costs • communicate effectively with design team, customers, etc. • apply OH&S practices in work operations • maintain accurate records
------------------------------	---

Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• organising work• completing tasks• identifying improvements• using workplace practices• using OH&S practices• recording and reporting accidents and incidents• assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes• recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions• completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	<p>Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.</p>
Context for assessment	<p>Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.</p>
Interdependent assessment	<p>This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.</p>
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• the elements and principles of design and how they are used to create good design in the fashion industry• the industry, global and local trends and detailed knowledge of garment construction• range of typical garment fabrics, including weight and other characteristics• marker making and cutting procedures• research sources• colour/colour mix and interpretation• fabrics, fibres, trims, accessories and their properties and characteristics• proposals, the detail required and issues associated with terms and conditions• costing processes• relevant OH&S legislation, regulatory requirements, copyright obligations and codes of practice• OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures• quality practices• workplace practices• recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• effectively develop and present design concepts within prescribed guidelines• generate ideas• produce sketches manually or using CAD systems• compile information• cost a range or garment• communicate effectively with individuals, work groups and supervisors

- select, interpret and apply procedures and processes
- prepare and present reports and information in appropriate formats
- consistently achieve quality and production requirements
- read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material
- maintain accurate records
- sequence operations
- meet specifications
- clarify and check task-related information
- carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

1 – Perform tasks effectively

2 – Manage tasks

3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Fashion range ideas are presented to client for consideration.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Relevant information is accessed and used to guide design process.	3
Plan and organise activities	Fashion range ideas are tested and developed for presentation.	3
Work with others and in teams	Team corporation and collaboration is central to fashion range development processes.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Costs of range production are calculated.	3
Solve problems	Fashion range concepts are compared to brief to check consistency.	3
Use technology	CAD tools are used to develop fashion range concepts.	3

LMTFD6007A Implement specialised patternmaking technologies

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to analyse and implement specialised patternmaking technologies.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to the analysing workplace requirements for the introduction or upgrading of specialised patternmaking technologies, assessing and implementing appropriate technologies into the workplace and managing the change process associated with the implementation.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Analyse and assess patternmaking technologies	<p>1.1 <i>Patternmaking technologies</i> (national and international) are identified and assessed.</p> <p>1.2 Current workplace applications are analysed to assess efficiency and appropriateness of technologies.</p> <p>1.3 <i>Software audits</i> are conducted.</p> <p>1.4 Opportunities for upgrading current technologies are assessed.</p> <p>1.5 Future and unmet requirements for patternmaking technologies are identified.</p>
2 Develop implementation plans	<p>2.1 Staff skills for implementation of <i>new technologies</i> are determined.</p> <p>2.2 Risks and obstacles relating to the introduction are identified.</p> <p>2.3 Changes to current patternmaking principles and practices are identified.</p> <p>2.4 Suppliers of patternmaking technologies are confirmed and their provision of initial and ongoing training and support are identified.</p> <p>2.5 Patternmaking technology implementation plan is developed, including objectives, timeframes, training and budget.</p>
3 Implement patternmaking technologies	<p>3.1 Patternmaking technologies are implemented and workplace practices adjusted according to implementation plan.</p> <p>3.2 Responsibilities for patternmaking technologies are delegated.</p> <p>3.3 Learning and development opportunities are provided according to</p>

- implementation plan.
- 3.4 Specifications and workplace practices for block development, patternmaking and pattern grading using the new technology are developed.
- 3.5 Support is made available to the workplace affected by implementation of the patternmaking technology.
- 3.6 Implementation of ***OH&S practices*** is ensured.
- 4 Monitor and manage patternmaking technologies
 - 4.1 Implementation of plan is monitored and supervised to ensure production and quality meet required standards of compliance.
 - 4.2 Production problems, faults and quality issues are identified and rectified.
 - 4.3 Where required, changes and adjustments are made to procedures.
- 5 Maintain records
 - 5.1 Records are maintained and reports prepared, where necessary.
 - 5.2 All processes and technology outcomes are documented.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

- | | |
|--|---|
| Patternmaking technologies may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• CAD systems• body scanners• specification and technical drawing software• grading and size table development software• 3D avatars and fitment software• Icon technology |
| Software audits may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• key audits• systems management audits |
| New technologies may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• technology which is new to the workplace• new aspects of currently used technology (i.e. upgraded technologies)• hardware or software components |
| OH&S practices | <p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• manual handling techniques• standard operating procedures• personal protective equipment• safe materials handling• taking of rest breaks• ergonomic arrangement of workplaces• following marked walkways• safe storage of equipment• housekeeping• reporting accidents and incidents• other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise |

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • analyse patternmaking technologies • analyse workplace requirements for new technologies • develop patternmaking technology implementation plan • implement patternmaking technology • communicate effectively with team members • monitor and manage implementation of new patternmaking technologies • apply OH&S practices in work operations • maintain accurate records
Consistency in performance	<p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Australian size standards • workplace and customer size charts • patternmaking and the development of a pattern • cost-efficiency in patternmaking • marker making • patternmaking principles and methodologies • grading of patterns • block construction • relevant OH&S legislation and codes of practice • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices

Underpinning skills	Demonstrates skills to: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• produce precise results• use CAD or manual systems• communicate effectively with individuals, work groups and supervisors• document and transfer information• consistently achieve quality and production output requirements• read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material• maintain accurate records• sequence operations• meet specifications• clarify and check task-related information• carry out work according to OH&S practices
---------------------	--

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

- 1 – Perform tasks effectively
- 2 – Manage tasks
- 3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Implementation plan is communicated to team members and tasks delegated.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Production processes for the workplace are identified and analysed.	3
Plan and organise activities	Sequence for implementation is determined.	3
Work with others and in teams	Information is clarified with team members.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques		3
Solve problems	Implementation issues are rectified.	3
Use technology	Appropriate machines and equipment are used efficiently.	3

LMTFD6008A Apply studio processes to create and produce designs for commercial production

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the skills and knowledge to apply studio processes to identify and explore commercial opportunities for the design and development of fashion designs.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit requires integration of skills across the design process and focuses on the development and production of a fashion design to achieve commercial and design objectives.</p> <p>Studio processes are to be applied in an iterative manner to accommodate experimentation and continual improvement in order to achieve desired design effects.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design and Technology

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Research fashion trends and industry practices	<p>1.1 National and international fashion trends are researched and analysed to guide formation of design directions.</p> <p>1.2 Industry production trends and influences are researched and analysed to assess impact on design direction.</p> <p>1.3 Commercial success of previous fashion products is analysed to assess relevance for design directions.</p> <p>1.4 Commercial and design objectives of the workplace are identified.</p> <p>1.5 Market research is conducted as required to inform development of design directions.</p> <p>1.6 Information is analysed and applied to design concept development and production.</p> <p>1.7 Expertise required for project is identified and sources selected.</p> <p>1.8 Information sources on design techniques and processes used to achieve desired effects are accessed and used as required throughout design and development processes.</p>
2 Create design brief	<p>2.1 Commercial opportunities for fashion designs are identified.</p> <p>2.2 Scoping of commercial opportunities is conducted.</p>

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| | 2.3 Design directions are clarified and explored with appropriate personnel . |
| | 2.4 Design brief is developed as an iterative process involving generation, development, testing, analysis and improvement of ideas and design direction. |
| | 2.5 Testing of design brief is conducted with appropriate personnel and market research activities. |
| | 2.6 Design brief and specifications for development are confirmed. |
| | 2.7 Continual review and testing of design brief is conducted through development of sample products. |
| 3 Develop and refine design concept | 3.1 Preliminary concept options are identified and discussed with client or workplace design team. |
| | 3.2 Options are evaluated against design brief specifications. |
| | 3.3 Principles and elements of design are applied to design concepts. |
| | 3.4 Criterion and selection processes are selected to refine concept options. |
| | 3.5 Marketing and distribution opportunities for design concepts are identified. |
| 4 Experiment with design concepts | 4.1 Preliminary concepts are scoped out using sketches, illustrations, models, samples, fibres and fabrics. |
| | 4.2 Evaluation of design concepts is conducted by self and others using selected criteria and processes. |
| | 4.3 Feedback and analysis is assessed for potential to improve design concept. |
| | 4.4 Further experimentation is used to develop design concepts. |
| | 4.5 Design concepts are selected for presentation and testing with appropriate personnel. |
| 5 Test design concepts | 5.1 Communication tools are used to present design concept to appropriate personnel. |
| | 5.2 Features and benefits of design concepts are presented. |
| | 5.3 Presentation skills are used to promote acceptance of design concept. |
| | 5.4 Responses are assessed and considered. |
| | 5.5 Design concept is modified and improved where possible. |
| 6 Scope production requirements | 6.1 All components required for production are identified. |
| | 6.2 Technical aspects of production are identified. |
| | 6.3 Specification sheet is completed to guide production. |
| | 6.4 Resources and production requirements are identified and sourced. |
| | 6.5 Production plan is developed to guide production. |
| | 6.6 Plan is discussed and confirmed with appropriate personnel. |
| 7 Develop design pattern | 7.1 Pattern base is selected to meet design brief. |
| | 7.2 Pattern base is modified to create patterns that meet design requirements and specifications. |
| | 7.3 Pattern is made according to industry standards, including industry markings and lay plans. |
| | 7.4 Toile is created to test accuracy of pattern and design effect. |
| | 7.5 Pattern is confirmed against design specifications. |
| 8 Produce fashion product | 8.1 Workplace is prepared according to OH&S practices . |
| | 8.2 Materials and resources are prepared. |

	8.3 Fabric is cut according to pattern directions.
	8.4 Product is sewn according to specifications.
	8.5 Product is finished according to specifications.
9 Evaluate and analyse design and production processes	9.1 Finished item is assessed against design specifications and design brief.
	9.2 Design result is analysed and evaluated to identify opportunities for improvement and required changes to design or production techniques.
	9.3 Production process is evaluated to identify opportunities for improvement.
	9.4 Process and improvements are documented.
10 Present finished product	10.1 Finished product is prepared for presentation to appropriate personnel.
	10.2 Accessories, fabric examples and components are selected to convey range and style options of design.
	10.3 Model is selected as required.
	10.4 Finished product is presented to appropriate personnel.
	10.5 Responses are received and assessed for improvement opportunities.
	10.6 Product is assessed for further production opportunities.

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

Market research may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • analysis of target market characteristics • sample testing • discussions with retailers and suppliers • discussions with staff and management • review of media portrayals • review of fashion shows • review of current pricing strategies and price points of products
Scoping may include identification of	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • target market • features and benefits • timing • economic and social expectations • scale of production
Appropriate personnel may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • managers, directors • trainer/mentor • designers • patternmakers • production supervisors • business development staff • marketing and sales staff • retailers and suppliers • clients • end users/target market

OH&S practices	<p>OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• manual handling techniques• standard operating procedures• personal protective equipment• safe materials handling• taking of rest breaks• ergonomic arrangement of workplaces• following marked walkways• safe storage of equipment• housekeeping• reporting accidents and incidents• other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise
Selection processes may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• checking against design brief• discussing with appropriate personnel• testing with target market• testing with production team• discussing with patternmaker• testing with sales and marketing professionals
Communication tools may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• inspiration board• storyboard• research information• multimedia tools• print and audio tools• demonstration or exhibition
Presentation skills may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• effective verbal and non-verbal communication• active listening• use of appropriate communication tools• positive language• clear statement of main points• interpersonal communication skills

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence	<p>Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• integrate skills to complete design and production process• identify commercial opportunities• develop a design brief• experiment with and assess design development processes and outcomes• implement iterative and continuous improvement processes• work with a range of industry experts• develop designs• produce fashion product
------------------------------	--

Consistency in performance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • apply OH&S practices in work operations • maintain accurate records <p>Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organising work • completing tasks • identifying improvements • using workplace practices • using OH&S practices • recording and reporting accidents and incidents • assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes • recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions • completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment
Resource implications	Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.
Context for assessment	Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.
Interdependent assessment	This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.
Underpinning knowledge	<p>Demonstrates knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • commercial practices in fashion design development • the elements and principles of design and how they are used to create good design in the fashion industry • information sources for market research • garment construction techniques • fabrics, fibres, trims, accessories and their properties and characteristics • relevant OH&S legislation and codes of practice • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	<p>Demonstrates skills to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • apply principles and elements of design • apply iterative experimentation and improvement processes • communicate and promote design concepts • identify commercial opportunities • review and assess processes and procedures • document and transfer information • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records • communicate within the workplace • sequence operations

- meet specifications
- clarify and check task-related information
- carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

1 – Perform tasks effectively

2 – Manage tasks

3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Commercial opportunities are discussed and explored with appropriate personnel.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Research is conducted to guide and inform the design process.	3
Plan and organise activities	Testing of design directions is planned to assess commercial viability.	3
Work with others and in teams	Information is accessed to assist design development and production.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Market research data is used to identify commercial opportunities.	3
Solve problems	Iterative processes are used to develop and improve design concepts.	3
Use technology	Research tools are used to guide the design brief and production processes.	3

LMTFD6009A Analyse fashion industry textiles to guide commercial development

Unit descriptor	This unit covers the range of skills and knowledge to effectively research and analyse textiles used in the fashion and clothing industries and make recommendations to guide the commercial development of fashion products.
Prerequisites	Nil
Application	<p>The unit applies to activities associated with researching and analysing raw materials, partially finished and finished fashion products. Findings should be used to make recommendations to guide commercial development of materials and products on aspects such as quality, processing, finish, use, properties or performance.</p> <p>Work is performed in line with a broad plan or strategy. Significant judgement is required in planning, design, technical or supervisory activities related to research and development activities.</p> <p>Work may be conducted in small to large scale enterprises and may involve individual and team-related activities.</p> <p>The application of this unit is according to OH&S practices of the enterprise and workplace practices, which may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • requirements prescribed by legislation, awards agreements and conditions of employment • standard operating procedures • work instructions • oral, written and visual communication • quality practices, including responsibility for maintenance of own work quality and contribution to quality improvement of team or section output • housekeeping • tasks related to environmental protection, waste disposal, pollution control, and recycling
Sector	Fashion Design

ELEMENTS	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1 Establish research criteria	1.1 Research objectives are established. 1.2 Criteria for research are established. 1.3 Research plan is developed.
2 Research textiles used in fashion products	2.1 Textiles used in fashion products are researched to determine properties, qualities , aesthetic and performance characteristics . 2.2 New and emerging textiles and textile processing techniques are investigated. 2.3 Global and domestic trends in use of textiles for fashion products are researched. 2.4 A range of routine and non-routine tests is used to gather data on textiles.
3 Research fashion products	3.1 Fashion products or uses incorporating researched textiles are identified.

- | | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----|---|
| | 3.2 | Quality and performance characteristics of a sample range of partially completed or finished fashion products are researched. |
| | 3.3 | Factors influencing quality of fashion products are identified. |
| | 3.4 | Product faults are identified and examined. |
| | 3.5 | Global and domestic implications for use of fashion products are researched. |
| | 3.5 | A range of <i>routine</i> and <i>non-routine tests</i> is used to gather data on fashion product quality. |
| 4 Analyse findings | 4.1 | Research findings are analysed and prioritised according to significance. |
| | 4.2 | Findings are analysed against research objectives and criteria. |
| | 4.3 | Methodology is reviewed to identify any potential influences on findings. |
| | 4.4 | Findings are analysed to establish ability contribute to commercial developments. |
| | 4.4 | Findings with most potential are selected for further review. |
| 5 Make recommendations | 5.1 | Features and benefits of selected findings are analysed. |
| | 5.2 | Disadvantages or risks associated with selected findings are analysed. |
| | 5.3 | Recommendations are made on how findings are used for commercial gain. |
| 6 Prepare reports and presentations | 6.1 | <i>Report</i> on research findings and recommendations is developed. |
| | 6.2 | Data is checked for accuracy and relevance, when required. |
| | 6.3 | <i>Reports</i> and presentations are prepared. |

RANGE STATEMENT

The Range Statement relates to the unit as a whole. It allows for different work environments and situations that may affect performance. It describes contextual variables that may be used or encountered when applying the competency in work situations. It allows for different work practices and work and knowledge requirements as well as for differences between organisations and workplaces. The bold italic wording, identified in the Elements and Performance Criteria are defined in this Range Statement. All work must comply with relevant Federal and State or Territory legislative or regulatory requirements.

- | | |
|------------------------------|---|
| Criteria may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • scope of research • required documentation • required research verification • research methodologies • timing • commercial constraints or requirements |
| Fashion textiles may include | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • natural fibres such as cotton, wool, silk, linen • synthetic fibres such as polyamide and polyester, acrylic, lycra, rayon, acetate • natural and synthetic single-yarn fabrics and blends, including: • knitted fabrics such as weft knits and warp knits • woven fabrics such as plain, twill, satin, dobby, jacquard and pile • non-woven fabrics such as felts, nets, braids, bonded and composite • emerging smart fabrics • raw materials • new and emerging textiles • yarn |

Qualities may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • firmness • softness • hand • weight • grain or gauge • drape • porosity • covering power • count • light penetration
Performance characteristics may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • stretch • abrasion • wearability • absorbency • durability • elasticity • heat sensitivity • shrink resistance • ease of care • drape quality • colour fastness • strength
Routine tests may include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • visual checking, colour matching, weighing, height/weight/thickness measuring, moisture measuring, measuring rubbing fastness, stretch, wear, cracking, colour, gloss, softness, handle, texture, light and colour fastness, heat fastness, tensile characteristics, flexibility, etc.
Non-routine tests include	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • tests performed in a laboratory environment to laboratory level standards
Reports may include:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • report structure: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • title page • table of contents • summary • introduction • theories and hypotheses • body (findings and conclusions) • methodology • test results • recommendations • references • appendixes • glossary • report content: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • text • graphs • charts

- tables
- diagrams

OH&S practices

OH&S practices must include hazard identification and control, risk assessment and implementation of risk reduction measures specific to the tasks described by this unit and may include:

- manual handling techniques
- standard operating procedures
- personal protective equipment
- safe materials handling
- taking of rest breaks
- ergonomic arrangement of workplaces
- following marked walkways
- safe storage of equipment
- housekeeping
- reporting accidents and incidents
- other OH&S practices relevant to the job and enterprise

EVIDENCE GUIDE

The Evidence Guide provides advice on assessment and must be read in conjunction with the Elements and Performance Criteria, Range Statement, Key Competencies and Assessment Guidelines for this Training Package.

Critical aspects of evidence

Demonstrates skills and knowledge to:

- plan and apply research methodology
- define research findings
- perform required tests
- form recommendations
- prepare reports/presentations

Consistency in performance

Consistently applies skills and knowledge when:

- organising work
- completing tasks
- identifying improvements
- using workplace practices
- using OH&S practices
- recording and reporting accidents and incidents
- assessing operational readiness of equipment used and work processes
- recognising and adapting to cultural differences in the workplace, including modes of behaviour and interactions
- completing work systematically with attention to detail without damage to goods and equipment

Resource implications

Access is required to real or appropriately simulated situations, including work areas, materials and equipment, and to information on workplace practices and OH&S practices.

Context for assessment

Assessment may occur on the job or in an appropriately simulated environment.

Interdependent assessment

This unit may be assessed independently or in combination with other relevant units.

Underpinning knowledge	Demonstrates knowledge of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • sources of information • qualities and properties of textiles • commercial relevance or objectives for research • research methodology • relevant OH&S legislation, codes of practice, copyright obligations, policies and procedures • OH&S practices, including hazard identification and control measures • quality practices • workplace practices • recording and reporting practices
Underpinning skills	Demonstrates skills to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • effectively evaluate processes • identify constraints • determine options • interpret findings • test validity of information • use research tools • establish, analyse and/or interpret procedures, where required • determine report requirements • read, interpret and follow information on work specifications, standard operating procedures and work instructions, and other reference material • maintain accurate records • communicate within the workplace • sequence operations • meet specifications • clarify and check task-related information • carry out work according to OH&S practices

KEY COMPETENCIES

The seven Key Competencies represent generic skills considered necessary for effective participation by an individual in the workplace. They focus on the application of knowledge and skills in an integrated way in workplace situations. There are three levels of performance defined within the Key Competencies. These are stand-alone levels and do not correspond to the AQF qualification levels.

Performance levels of Key Competencies

1 – Perform tasks effectively

2 – Manage tasks

3 – Use concepts for evaluating and reshaping tasks

Key Competency	Example	Level
Communicate ideas and information	Research theories and methodologies are discussed and tested with other informed individuals.	3
Collect, analyse and organise information	Research data is collected and analysed on a regular and ongoing basis.	3

Plan and organise activities	Research findings are prioritised and used in the development of recommendations.	3
Work with others and in teams	Work colleagues are consulted in the evaluation of ideas and research findings.	3
Use mathematical ideas and techniques	Statistical data is analysed to evaluate test results.	3
Solve problems	Research methodologies are reviewed to assess potential influences on research findings.	3
Use technology	Research and evaluation tools and technology are used effectively.	3